



# UNIT 1: MY NEW SCHOOL

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

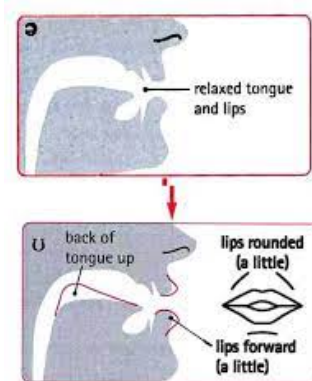
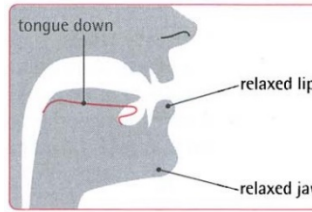


School things		
School supplies	School subjects	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- course book</li><li>- pencil sharpener</li><li>- school bag</li><li>- calculator</li><li>- eraser/ rubber</li><li>- compass</li><li>- dictionary</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Mathematics</li><li>- Literature</li><li>- Physics</li><li>- Geography</li><li>- History</li><li>- Chemistry</li><li>- Physical Education</li></ul>	

	School activities	
	Verb	Noun
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- study</li> <li>- achieve</li> <li>- concentrate</li> <li>- memorise</li> <li>- revise</li> <li>- look up</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- course</li> <li>- degree</li> <li>- experience</li> <li>- instruction</li> <li>- mark</li> <li>- qualification</li> </ul>

## II. Ngữ âm

### 1. Âm /əʊ/ & /ʌ/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Môi	Lưỡi	Minh họa
/əʊ/	Dài	Môi thả lỏng rồi dần tạo thành khẩu hình hơi tròn, hơi vươn ra phía trước	Lưỡi thả lỏng.	
/ʌ/	Ngắn	Môi thả lỏng, dần tạo thành khẩu hình tròn	Lưỡi di chuyển ra sau từ vị trí thả lỏng	

• Âm /əʊ/ có thể được nhận diện trong các từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- o	no	cold	post	close	home
- ow	know	low	show	slow	
- oa	boat	coast			
- oe	toe				

• Âm /ʌ/ có thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- u	bus	lunch	culture	number	plunge
-----	-----	-------	---------	--------	--------

- o	son	month	mother	tough	
- ou	country	trouble	cousin		
- oo	flood	blood			

## 2. Trọng âm của tính từ và động từ có hai âm tiết

<b>Quy tắc</b>	Với tính từ có hai âm tiết, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.	Với động từ có hai âm tiết, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai.
<b>Ví dụ</b>	lovely, happy, busy, careful, lucky, healthy, etc.	begin, forgive, agree, relax, deny, become, etc.
<b>Ngoại lệ</b>	Âm thứ hai có chứa nguyên âm đôi, trọng âm rơi vào âm thứ nhất. Ví dụ: alone, amazed, asleep, etc.	Nếu âm thứ hai là nguyên âm ngắn kết thúc là <i>-er, -en, -ish, -ege</i> , trọng âm thường rơi vào âm thứ nhất. Ví dụ: answer, enter, happen, offer, open, visit, etc.

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Thì hiện tại đơn

#### a. Cách dùng

- Dùng để diễn tả thói quen hoặc những việc thường xuyên xảy ra ở hiện tại.
- Dùng để diễn tả những sự vật, sự việc xảy ra mang tính quy luật.
- Dùng để diễn tả các sự thật hiển nhiên, một chân lý, các phong tục tập quán, các hiện tượng tự nhiên.
- Dùng để diễn tả lịch trình cố định của tàu, xe, máy bay, cuộc họp.

#### b. Dạng thức của thì hiện tại đơn

Thể	Động từ <i>be</i>	Động từ thường
<b>Khẳng định</b>	S + am/is/are + noun/adj.	S + V(s/es) (+O).
<b>Phủ định</b>	S + am/is/are not + noun/adj.	S + do not/ does not + V (+O).
<b>Nghi vấn</b>	Am/is/are + S + noun/adj? → Yes, S + am/is/are. → No, S + am not/ isn't/aren't.	Do/Does + S + V (+O)? → Yes, S + do/does. → No, S + don't/doesn't.

#### c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Trạng từ chỉ tần suất được chia thành 2 nhóm:

- Nhóm trạng từ đứng ở cuối câu: *every day/ week/ month/year* (hàng ngày/ hàng tuần/ hàng tháng/ hàng năm), *once* (một lần), *twice* (hai lần), *three times* (ba lần), *four times* (bốn lần), ...
- Nhóm trạng từ thường đứng ở trong câu, trước động từ thường, sau động từ *be* và trợ động từ:

Tần suất	Trạng từ chỉ tần suất	
100%	always	(luôn luôn)
80%	usually, frequently, regularly	(thường xuyên)
60%	often	(thường)
40%	sometimes, occasionally, at times	(thỉnh thoảng)
20%	rarely, seldom, hardly	(hiếm khi)
0%	never	(không bao giờ)

#### d. Cách thêm s/es vào sau động từ

Thêm "s" vào đằng sau hầu hết các động từ.	work – works, read – reads, love – loves, see – sees
Thêm "es" vào các động từ kết thúc bằng "ch, sh, x, s, z, o"	miss – misses, watch – watches, mix – mixes, go – goes, push – pushes, buzz – buzzes
Đối với những động từ tận cùng là "y" - Nếu trước "y" là một nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i), ta giữ nguyên "y" và thêm "s". - Nếu trước "y" là một phụ âm - ta đổi "y" thành "i" rồi thêm "es".	play – plays, buy – buys, pay – pays fly – flies, cry – cries, fry – fries
Trường hợp ngoại lệ	have – has

## 2. Hiện tại tiếp diễn (Present continuous)

### a. Cách dùng

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được dùng để nói về:

- việc đang xảy ra ngay tại thời điểm nói;
- việc xảy ra xung quanh thời điểm nói hoặc tình huống chỉ mang tính tạm thời;
- thói quen khiến người khác khó chịu (thường đi cùng *always*)

### b. Cấu trúc

Câu khẳng định	Câu phủ định	Câu nghi vấn
----------------	--------------	--------------

S + am/is/are + V <sub>-ing</sub> ...	S + am/is/are not + V <sub>-ing</sub> ...	Am/Is/Are + S + V <sub>-ing</sub> ...? → Yes, S + am/is/are. → No, S + am/is/are + not.
---------------------------------------	---	---

### c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn thường được sử dụng cùng các từ/cụm từ sau: *(right) now, at the moment, at present, today, this week/month, etc.*

### d. Cách thêm -ing vào sau động từ

Động từ kết thúc bởi 'e', ta bỏ 'e' thêm -ing	have - having	make - making
Động từ kết thúc bởi 'ee', ta thêm -ing mà không bỏ 'e'	see - seeing	agree - agreeing
Động từ kết thúc bởi 'ie', ta đổi 'ie' → 'y' rồi thêm ing	lie - lying	die - dying
Động từ kết thúc bởi một trọng âm chứa 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i) + 1 phụ âm, ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm -ing	run - running	stop - stopping

### 3. Động từ tình thái (Stative verbs)

Động từ tình thái thường không được sử dụng để mô tả hành động mà được dùng để mô tả tình trạng, trạng thái (cảm xúc, suy nghĩ). Những động từ này thường không được sử dụng cùng với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.

✓ *I like reading books in my free time.*

✗ *I am liking reading books in my free time.*

Một số động từ tình thái phổ biến được sử dụng để đề cập tới:

- Mô tả (description): appear, hear, look like, see, taste, weigh, smell, sound, feel

*You look amazing in that dress.*

- Cảm xúc (feeling): like, hate, love, prefer, want, need, enjoy, mind

*Do you mind if I open the window?*

- Suy nghĩ (thinking): agree, believe, forget, know, think, understand, hope

*I think you are playing too much computer games every day.*

- Sở hữu (possession): belong to, contain, have, own

*My parents own a restaurant.*

- Tồn tại (being): be, exist

*Many people don't think that ghosts exist.*

Một số động từ đã được liệt kê ở trên có thể mang nghĩa 'tình thái' (state) and cũng có thể mang nghĩa 'hành động' (action).

- ✓ *I have two sisters.* (tình huống cố định)
- ✓ *I am having problems with this computer.* (tình huống tạm thời)
- ✓ *I am tasting the sauce to see if it needs any more salt.* (tình huống đang xảy ra)
- ✓ *This sauce tastes great.* (mô tả hương vị)

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Match the word in column A with its synonym in column B. There are more words than needed.**

A		B
1. memorise	_____	a. guidance
2. revise	_____	b. search
3. mark	_____	c. delete
4. talented	_____	d. review
5. concentrate	_____	e. learn by heart
6. instruction	_____	f. encourage
7. look up	_____	g. focus
8. make progress	_____	h. score
		i. advance
		j. gifted

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the given words or phrases. There are more words than needed and you may use one word twice.**

<i>course</i>	<i>concentration</i>	<i>talent</i>	<i>memorise</i>	<i>degree</i>
<i>marks</i>	<i>look up</i>	<i>instructor</i>	<i>revise</i>	<i>term</i>

- Scientists have proved that meditation is a good way to improve your \_\_\_\_\_.
- Lan shows her \_\_\_\_\_ not only as an actress but also as a singer.
- In order to \_\_\_\_\_ a new word, I need to write it down several times.
- I took a swimming \_\_\_\_\_ last week since I'm always into water-based sports.
- Tom has a law \_\_\_\_\_ after 7 years studying in university.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ demonstrates the proper way to warm up before working out.

7. Anna is so intelligent that she always gets the highest \_\_\_\_\_ in Maths.
8. If you want to excel at English, you need to practice speaking and \_\_\_\_\_ words that you have learned.
9. I'm more than ready for a new school \_\_\_\_\_ to come.
10. It's good that you \_\_\_\_\_ the English words that you don't know.

**Exercise 3: Put the word in the correct box.**

exercise	television	a movie	judo	breakfast
cartoon	karate	lunch	soccer basketball	a series
painting	dinner	the Maths	judo	baseball
<b>play</b>				
<b>have</b>				
<b>do</b>				
<b>watch</b>				

**Exercise 4: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word at the end of the sentence.**

1. Sarah ranks first in her class, her academic (ACHIEVE) \_\_\_\_\_ are remarkable.
2. The wonderful music and the delicious food all come together to make a (MEMORISE) \_\_\_\_\_ occasion.
3. Staying (CONCENTRATE) \_\_\_\_\_ is the prerequisite for an effective learning section.
4. The shelf comes with full (INSTRUCT) \_\_\_\_\_ on how to build it.
5. You are not (QUALIFICATION) \_\_\_\_\_ for this job unless you have at least 2 years of experience.
6. After one month studying English, I am going to take a (REVISE) test tomorrow.
7. Peter is (EXPERIENCE) enough to speak in front of a big crowd without anxiety.
8. You need to keep making (PROGRESSIVE) in order to be fluent in Chinese.
9. There are hundreds of piano students in this art school, but Lucy is an extraordinarily special (TALENTED).
10. My 18<sup>th</sup> birthday party was one of the most unforgettable (MEMORISE) in my life.

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct groups.**

disclose	notebook	honey	moreover	nothing	lose
smoke	dance	country	globe	dozen	couple

cupid	pillow	sunshine	punch	devote	mouse
sorrow	across	telescope	redundancy		
/əʊ/			/ʌ/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. A. <u>o</u> we	B. alth <u>o</u> ugh	C. <u>c</u> omfort	D. <u>l</u> ocal
2. A. <u>o</u> nly	B. <u>h</u> ome	C. alm <u>o</u> st	D. <u>c</u> ome
3. A. bure <u>a</u> u	B. negot <u>i</u> ate	C. <u>s</u> ummer	D. ech <u>o</u>
4. A. <u>t</u> oast	B. w <u>o</u> nder	C. <u>o</u> nce	D. am <u>o</u> ng
5. A. str <u>u</u> cture	B. acc <u>o</u> mplish	C. <u>t</u> oken	D. bl <u>oo</u> d
6. A. <u>l</u> ow	B. th <u>o</u> rough	C. <u>c</u> ompass	D. m <u>o</u> nk
7. A. th <u>u</u> nder	B. tr <u>u</u> ck	C. <u>u</u> nder	D. tabl <u>e</u> au
8. A. sn <u>o</u> wy	B. m <u>o</u> tivate	C. beh <u>o</u> ld	D. m <u>o</u> ther
9. A. S <u>u</u> nday	B. b <u>u</u> tter	C. d <u>o</u> ugh	D. n <u>o</u> ne
10. A. ab <u>o</u> ve	B. narrow <u>o</u>	C. <u>l</u> ove	D. fr <u>o</u> nt

**Exercise 3: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. comfort	B. focus	C. progress	D. review
2. A. boarding	B. revise	C. surround	D. advance
3. A. homework	B. talent	C. delete	D. study
4. A. achieve	B. argue	C. culture	D. friendly
5. A. forward	B. gifted	C. proper	D. rely
6. A. pretty	B. construct	C. modem	D. cheerful
7. A. promote	B. enhance	C. cruel	D. afraid
8. A. prefer	B. jealous	C. nervous	D. angry
9. A. advise	B. expand	C. appear	D. active
10. A. between	B. among	C. confident	D. design

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Provide the verb in the correct form of present simple.**

1. The train to London (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ at 9:00 and (come) \_\_\_\_\_ back at 6:30 every day.
2. What time (the grocery stores/close) \_\_\_\_\_ here?
3. I have a home gym, but I (not/use) \_\_\_\_\_ it very often.
4. How many cigarettes (you/smoke) \_\_\_\_\_ a day?
5. "What (you/do) \_\_\_\_\_?" – "I'm a philanthropist."
6. "Where (your mother/come) \_\_\_\_\_ from?" – "She (come) \_\_\_\_\_ from Mexico."
7. It (take) \_\_\_\_\_ me an hour to get to New Jersey. How long (it/take) \_\_\_\_\_ you?
8. I (play) \_\_\_\_\_ the cello, but I (not/play) \_\_\_\_\_ very well.
9. I don't understand the word 'turmoil'. What (it/mean) \_\_\_\_\_?
10. George (not/visit) \_\_\_\_\_ his grandmother very often.

**Exercise 2: Put the verb into the correct form, using present continuous.**

1. Stop fooling around! I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to concentrate.
2. Look! It (snow) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Why (you/look) \_\_\_\_\_ at me like that? Did I say something wrong?
4. You (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of noise. Can you be a little bit quieter?
5. Excuse me, I (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a phone booth. Is there one near here?
6. Can you hear those people next door? They (yell) \_\_\_\_\_ at each other again.
7. Why (you/wear) \_\_\_\_\_ your shorts today? It's very cold.
8. I (not/work) \_\_\_\_\_ this week. I'm on vacation.
9. I want to lose weight. I (not/eat) \_\_\_\_\_ anything today.
10. Listen to those people. What language (they/speak) \_\_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 3: Choose the best verb and provide the correct form to complete each sentence.**

1. His wife always \_\_\_\_\_ with everything he says, (agree, realise, recognise)
2. This book \_\_\_\_\_ to me. (own, belong, contain)
3. His father \_\_\_\_\_ a chain of hotels. (contain, belong, own)
4. Money doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ to me. (depend, mind, matter)
5. That bottle \_\_\_\_\_ petrol. (contain, own, belong)

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ that I've made a mistake. (matter, realise, depend)
7. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ if I open a window? (matter, suppose, mind)
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ it's time to go home. (believe, own, mind)
9. "He's a great president." – "I don't \_\_\_\_\_." (matter, recognise, agree)
10. Let's buy these cushions. They \_\_\_\_\_ so soft. (taste, feel, sound)

**Exercise 4: Circle the correct verb forms.**

1. I *think* / *am thinking* you're right.
2. *Do you know* / *Are you knowing* that woman's name?
3. I *don't understand* / *am not understanding* this letter.
4. Why *do you drive* / *are you driving* so fast?
5. I *don't remember* / *am not remembering* Andrea's phone number.
6. Vegetarians are people who *don't eat* / *are not eating* meat.
7. Look out! My husband *comes* / *is coming*.
8. Look! She *wears* / *is wearing* the same shoes as me.
9. I *stay* / *am staying* with John for a few weeks until my flat is ready.
10. "What *are you looking* / *do you look* at?" – "A strange bird."

**Exercise 5: Identify the mistake in following sentences and correct it. If the sentence has no mistakes, write 'Correct'.**

1. Look! It rains. \_\_\_\_\_
2. I'm getting tired. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I'm watching TV every evening. \_\_\_\_\_
4. 'What are you doing?' - 'I'm reading.' \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'm not knowing Alicia's address. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Food gets very expensive these days. \_\_\_\_\_
7. 'The Sun goes round the Earth.' - 'No, it doesn't.' \_\_\_\_\_
8. Mark hates waking up early. \_\_\_\_\_
9. We are seeing the bank manager at two o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I'm not understanding what she wants. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I don't know your telephone number. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Please don't make so much noise. I study. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Look! Somebody is climbing that tree over there. \_\_\_\_\_

14. Can you hear them? What do they talk about? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Are you believing in God? \_\_\_\_\_
16. The Moon goes around the Earth. \_\_\_\_\_
17. What are you thinking about my idea? \_\_\_\_\_
18. I'm usually going to work by car. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Jean doesn't speak any foreign languages. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Hurry! The bus comes. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 6: Fill in the gaps with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. I'm busy right now. I (fill in) \_\_\_\_\_ a form for a new job.
2. My tutor (see) \_\_\_\_\_ me for a tutorial every Monday at two o'clock.
3. Grace (not/study) \_\_\_\_\_ very hard at the moment. I (not/think) \_\_\_\_\_ she will pass her exams.
4. 'What (he/do) \_\_\_\_\_?' - 'He (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to fix the television.'
5. Animals (breathe in) \_\_\_\_\_ oxygen and (give out) \_\_\_\_\_ carbon dioxide.
6. Be quiet! I (want) \_\_\_\_\_ to hear the news.
7. In my country, we (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ on the right-hand side of the road.
8. My friend and his parents (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ round the world this summer, and probably won't be back for a couple of months.
9. The university (run) \_\_\_\_\_ the same course every year.
10. Mark (think) \_\_\_\_\_ of retiring early because he isn't happy at work anymore.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. ass <u>o</u> ciation	B. m <u>o</u> ment	C. s <u>o</u> omething	D. s <u>u</u> ppose
2. A. wid <u>o</u> w	B. y <u>o</u> ung	C. p <u>u</u> blic	D. bl <u>oo</u> d
3. A. book <u>s</u>	B. watch <u>e</u> s	C. choos <u>e</u> s	D. clos <u>e</u> s
4. A. produ <u>u</u> ction	B. any <u>o</u> ne	C. <u>u</u> nderstand	D. tomor <u>o</u> rw
5. A. emot <u>i</u> onal	B. m <u>o</u> nth	C. g <u>o</u> lden	D. sc <u>o</u> pe

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. hotel	B. national	C. brilliant	D. notebook
2. A. suffer	B. cooker	C. amazing	D. value

3. A. achieve	B. myself	C. balloon	D. pretty
4. A. breakfast	B. manage	C. narrow	D. forever
5. A. forward	B. gifted	C. proper	D. rely

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the given words.**

Sarah is a six-grader. She usually (1. wake up) \_\_\_\_\_ at 6 a.m. She then (2. eat) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast and (3. feed) \_\_\_\_\_ her lovely puppy, Cloudy. She (4. go) \_\_\_\_\_ to school at 7 a.m. every day. Her father (5. take) \_\_\_\_\_ her to school in the morning and (6. pick) \_\_\_\_\_ her up in the afternoon. Sarah (7. be) \_\_\_\_\_ an excellent student. She always (8. rank) \_\_\_\_\_ first in her class. Her favourite subjects (9. be) \_\_\_\_\_ English and Maths. She also (10. love) \_\_\_\_\_ playing sports. She (11. join) \_\_\_\_\_ karate and basketball club at school. At the moment, she (12. play) \_\_\_\_\_ basketball in the school's basketball court. Her classmates (13. eat) \_\_\_\_\_ in the canteen or (14. stroll around) \_\_\_\_\_ the school yard.

**Exercise 4: Put in the correct verb forms, using present simple or present continuous.**

1. We (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the bank manager this afternoon.
2. 'I (think) \_\_\_\_\_ you're crazy.'
3. Why (that woman/ look) \_\_\_\_\_ at me?
4. I (not/ have) \_\_\_\_\_ much money just now.
5. That girl (look) \_\_\_\_\_ like your sister.
6. 'I'm not going to help you. I (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ the reason why I should.'
7. 'What (you/ think) \_\_\_\_\_ about?' - 'Life.'
8. I often (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ very tired in the mornings.
9. 'How is Jane doing?' - 'She (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful holiday in Greece.'
10. I (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ you're wrong to get married.

**Exercise 5: Complete these sentences using one of the verbs. You don't have to use all the verbs and you can use some of them more than once.**

<i>get</i>	<i>become</i>	<i>change</i>	<i>rise</i>	<i>improve</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>increase</i>
------------	---------------	---------------	-------------	----------------	-------------	-----------------

1. The population of the world \_\_\_\_\_ very fast. There are now more than seven billion people in total.
2. The number of homeless people \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.
3. He is still feeling sick, but he \_\_\_\_\_ better slowly.
4. These days, food \_\_\_\_\_ more and more expensive. Many impoverished people

cannot afford to buy food for their families.

5. The world \_\_\_\_\_. Things never stay the same.
6. The cost of living \_\_\_\_\_. Every year things are more expensive.
7. George has gone to work in Russia. At first, his Russian wasn't very good, but now it \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The economic situation is already very bad, and it \_\_\_\_\_ worse.
9. The Sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the East and sets in the West.
10. Two months ago, she was bad at English, but now she is working hard to \_\_\_\_\_ her English skills.

**Exercise 6: Match the sentences in column A to those in column B.**

Column A	Column B
1. Please don't make so much noise.	a. I am trying to sleep.
2. I have two hours to finish my homework.	b. They are not telling the truth.
3. I don't believe what they said.	c. Do you know where she is?
4. The car isn't good enough for them.	d. It is still raining heavily outside.
5. There is difficulty at work.	e. This is my favourite song ever!
6. I must finish packing as soon as possible.	f. I am having a stomachache.
7. Can you turn up the music?	g. The company is not making enough
8. Let's stay inside for a little longer.	money to pay the employees.
9. I am looking everywhere for Sarah.	h. The taxi to the airport is right outside.
10. I feel terrible.	i. The homework deadline is 9 p.m., and

Answer:

1 -	2 -	3 -	4 -	5 -
6 -	7 -	8 -	9 -	10 -

**Exercise 7: Provide the correct form of the word given.**

1. Han (not/ drink) \_\_\_\_\_ coffee very often.
2. What time (it/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ now in London?
3. I've got a bike, but I prefer (walk) \_\_\_\_\_ to school.
4. 'Where (Lan/ come) \_\_\_\_\_ from?' - 'From Cuba.'
5. ' \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ want) to be a singer in the future' - 'No, I want to be a musician.'
6. I (attend) \_\_\_\_\_ a meeting at 8 a.m. tomorrow morning.

7. Hey! Who (stand) \_\_\_\_\_ next to you?
8. Michael isn't very fit. He (never/ work out) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Lucy (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a place to live. She (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ with her parents until she finds somewhere.
10. Sarah is in Hanoi right now. She (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ at the Lake Hotel. She (always/ stay) \_\_\_\_\_ there when she's in New York.

**Exercise 8: Identify the mistake in following sentences and correct it. If the sentence has no mistakes, write 'Correct'.**

1. Water is boiling at 100 Celsius degrees. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Stop talking! I'm preparing for my test. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The boys are playing football and do karate now. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you understand what the lecturer talks about? \_\_\_\_\_
5. I am not British, but I am understanding what they are talking about. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Not again! You are always late! \_\_\_\_\_
7. This computer is having the most reasonable price. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Every Monday morning, I am having a revision test. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I want to buy a new dress for my sister's wedding. \_\_\_\_\_
10. What is the name of the woman standing next to Lan? \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 9: Choose the best answer.**

1. She is \_\_\_\_\_ judo in the schoolyard at the moment.  
A. playing                      B. doing                      C. making                      D. using
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ a Science lesson every Monday.  
A. am having                      B. am making                      C. have                      D. make
3. \_\_\_\_\_ helps me a lot in doing Math equations.  
A. The calculator                      B. The eraser                      C. The scissors                      D. The sharpener
4. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ video games?  
A. play                      B. do                      C. playing                      D. doing
5. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ his bike around the park every morning. He loves doing exercises.  
A. drives                      B. rides                      C. drive                      D. ride
6. You know what? You \_\_\_\_\_ the most beautiful person I've ever met.  
A. are                      B. be                      C. being                      D. are being

7. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ about the topic: American history!
- A. talking                      B. be talking                      C. talk                      D. talked
8. The water \_\_\_\_\_. Be careful!
- A. boils                      B. boiling                      C. boiled                      D. is boiling
9. Remember to \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow meeting. It's very important.
- A. take                      B. sit                      C. attend                      D. have
10. 'What \_\_\_\_\_ ? I don't get it.'
- A. are you talking about                      B. do you talk
- C. you talk                      D. talking about
11. I rarely \_\_\_\_\_ a shower in the morning.
- A. have                      B. do                      C. see                      D. play
12. I can't see you tonight, Sarah. I \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema with my mom.
- A. go                      B. going                      C. am going                      D. went
13. Peter always tries to \_\_\_\_\_ the differences and the similarities of substances.
- A. understanding                      B. understood                      C. understands                      D. understand
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ with my sister for a few weeks because she is sick, and I can help her.
- A. am staying                      B. stay                      C. staying                      D. be staying
15. What activities \_\_\_\_\_ after class?
- A. are you doing                      B. do you do                      C. you do                      D. you doing
16. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ at 4 o'clock this afternoon.
- A. take off                      B. takes off                      C. takes down                      D. take down
17. We \_\_\_\_\_ two English lessons on Tuesday.
- A. have                      B. are having                      C. has                      D. be having
18. This cake \_\_\_\_\_ so delicious. I just bought it this morning.
- A. is tasting                      B. tastes                      C. tasted                      D. will taste
19. Not again! Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ her piano at night. It's so noisy that I can't sleep.
- A. is playing                      B. plays                      C. is always playing                      D. will play
20. Let's buy that special shampoo for the dog. I \_\_\_\_\_ him a bath tonight.
- A. am giving                      B. give                      C. gives                      D. giving

**Exercise 10: Reading the following passage and write True (T) or False (F).**

It's no use learning a list of new words. Instead, when you find a new word, you should learn the whole sentence it appears in. Don't learn the word in isolation, learn the word in context. You'll find it easier to remember the word and how to use it by remembering an example sentence. Write the phrase down in a notebook. Make your own mini-dictionary of new words and refer to it whenever possible. Try to use the new word in conversation or when speaking.

For example, you find a new word: 'frightening' and you look it up in your dictionary. You find out that frightening means 'something that makes you feel scared/fear'. In your notebook you write a sentence when using that word: *'The horror film I watched was frightening. It gave me bad dreams last night'*

(Source: <https://www.ecenglish.com/>)

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Memorizing a word list is useful.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Words should be learned in isolation first.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ You should learn by heart the meaning of the word in context.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ You should consult the dictionary you make for yourself.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Applying words to talking to others can be of little help.

**Exercise 11: Rewrite the following sentences with the given words.**

1. 'You lost your keys again.' ALWAYS

→ 'Not again!

2. We need to learn by heart ten new words per day. MEMORISE

→ It is necessary

3. I reviewed what I learned carefully because I wanted to get an A+. REVISE

→ In order to

4. Michael was a talented singer, but he gave up his profession early. GIFTED

→ Although

5. You are supposed to concentrate on your work. FOCUS

→ You should

6. You should consult the dictionary to get the correct word meaning. UP

→ So as to

7. Peter has made very attempt to reach his goal. ACHIEVE

→ Peter has tried

8. I needed to take 4 exams in a row, which was exhausting. SIT

→ I was exhausted

# UNIT 2: MY HOME

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng



picture, sofa, chair,  
television, desk,  
ceiling fan, lamp,  
fireplace, cushion



bed, chest of drawers,  
wardrobe, light,  
poster, air-conditioner



cupboard, sink, table,  
cooker, fridge,  
microwave, stool,  
dishwasher

## II. Ngữ âm

### 1. Phát âm: /iz/, /s/, vs. /z/ (Cách phát âm đuôi -s / -es)

Có 3 cách phát âm đuôi -s/-es, phụ thuộc vào âm tận cùng của từ như sau:

/s/						
Các âm tận cùng						Ví dụ
/t/	/k/	/f/	/p/	/θ/		• wants • attacks • stops • baths • laughs
t, k, f, gh, p, th						
/iz/						
Các âm tận cùng						Ví dụ
/s/	/z/	/ʃ/	/tʃ/	/dʒ/	/ʒ/	• dances • watches • causes • changes • washes • .garages
ce, ss, x, se, sh, ch, ge						
/z/						
Các âm còn lại						Ví dụ
						• plays • allows • features

### 2. Trọng âm của Danh từ có hai âm tiết

<b>Quy tắc</b>	Với danh từ có hai âm tiết, trọng âm thường rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.
<b>Ví dụ</b>	doctor, symptom, mountain, fever, clinic, etc.
<b>Ngoại lệ</b>	Nếu âm tiết thứ hai có chứa nguyên âm đôi và dài sẽ nhấn trọng âm ở âm tiết thứ hai. Ví dụ: advice, machine, design, balloon, estate, mistake, tonight, etc.
<b>Lưu ý</b>	Một số từ hai âm tiết sẽ có trọng âm khác nhau khi từ loại khác nhau. - Danh từ desert (sa mạc), record (bản thu) sẽ có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất: desert /'dezət/, record /'rekɔ:d/. - Động từ desert (bỏ mặc), record (thu lại, ghi lại) có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai: desert /dɪ'zɜ:t/, record /rɪ'kɔ:d/.

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. There is/There are

*There is/There are* mang nghĩa là có, dùng để giới thiệu rằng có cái gì, ai đó, ở đâu trong hiện tại nhưng không có ý sở hữu, không thuộc về ai, chỉ có nghĩa là có hiện diện.

<b>Câu khẳng định</b>	There is (+ a/an) + danh từ số ít/danh từ không đếm được (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/thành phần khác).
-----------------------	---

	<i>There is a cooker on the table.</i>
	There are + danh từ số nhiều (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/thành phần khác). <i>There are a lot of beggars in Vietnam.</i>
<b>Câu phủ định</b>	There is + not + (any) + danh từ số ít/danh từ không đếm được (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/thành phần khác). <i>There is 't any money in my wallet.</i>
	There are + not + danh từ số nhiều (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác). <i>There aren 't many cycios in District 1.</i>
<b>Câu nghi vấn</b>	Is there + danh từ số ít / danh từ không đếm được (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác)? - Yes, there is. / No, there isn't. <i>Is there any' milk in the fridge? - Yes, there is.</i>
	Are there + danh từ số nhiều (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác)? - Yes, there are. / No, there aren't. <i>Are there any eggs in the kitchen? - No, there aren't.</i>

## 2. Lượng từ (Quantifiers)

		Lưu ý
many	+ danh từ đếm được số nhiều	có thể sử dụng cho cả câu khẳng định, câu phủ định, và câu hỏi;
a few		= some, a small number / thường mang nghĩa khẳng định, hài lòng với số lượng hoặc đủ dùng; <i>I enjoy my life here. I have a few friends and we meet quite often.</i>
few		= not many / thường mang nghĩa phủ định, không hài lòng với số lượng có hoặc không đủ dùng; <i>Vicky doesn't enjoy living in London. She has few friends there.</i>
much	+ danh từ không đếm được	thường không sử dụng trong câu khẳng định, so sánh: <i>We didn 't spend much money, và We spent a lot of money.</i>
a little		= some, a small amount / thường mang nghĩa khẳng định, hài lòng với số lượng hoặc đủ dùng; <i>Let's go and have coffee. We have a little time before the train</i>

		<i>leaves.</i>
little		= not much / thường mang nghĩa phủ định, không hài lòng với số lượng có hoặc không đủ dùng; <i>Gary is very busy with his job. He has little time for other things.</i>
some	+ danh từ không	thường được sử dụng trong câu khẳng định;
any	đếm được / danh	thường được sử dụng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi;
a lot of / lots of	từ đếm được số nhiều	có thể sử dụng cho cả câu khẳng định, câu phủ định, và câu hỏi;

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

#### Exercise 1: Match the word with its definition

A		B
1. comer	_____	a. a set of rooms for living in, especially on one floor of a building.
2. wardrobe	_____	b. a piece of kitchen equipment that uses electricity to preserve food at a cold temperature.
3. hall	_____	c. the space or room at the top of a building, under the roof, often used for storing things.
4. fridge	_____	d. the area just inside the main entrance of a house, apartment, or other building that leads to other rooms and usually to the stairs.
5. apartment	_____	e. a tall cupboard in which you hang your clothes
6. fork	_____	f. a machine that washes dirty plates, cups, forks, etc.
7. shelf	_____	g. a box-shaped container, without a top, that is part of a piece of furniture. It slides in and out to open and close and is used for keeping things in.
8. attic	_____	h. the point, area, or line that is formed by the meeting of two lines, surfaces, roads, etc.
9. drawer	_____	i. a long, flat board fixed horizontally, usually against a wall or inside a cupboard so that objects can be stored on it.

10. dishwasher	_____	j. a small object with three or four points and a handle, that you use to pick up food and eat with.
----------------	-------	--

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given in capital.**

1. Your living room looks \_\_\_\_\_. AMAZE
2. I really love the \_\_\_\_\_ in your house. Did you make them on your own? DECORATE
3. Furniture should be \_\_\_\_\_. It will make our houses look great. DECORATE
4. She is moving in her new house next week. That means she has only about 4 days to \_\_\_\_\_ the place. FURNITURE
5. These sofa cushions feel so \_\_\_\_\_. Where did you get them? COMFORT

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct group. There are a few words that do not belong to any group.**

s <u>ick</u>	loo <u>k</u> s	tak <u>e</u> s	wash <u>e</u> s	sho <u>e</u> s	bambo <u>o</u> s	promis <u>e</u> s	decid <u>e</u> s
s <u>uccess</u>	enjoy <u>s</u>	evolv <u>e</u> s	s <u>ugar</u>	temp <u>e</u> r	laugh <u>s</u>	exist <u>s</u>	hands <u>ome</u>
confid <u>e</u> s	idea <u>s</u>	s <u>upport</u>	machin <u>e</u> s	watch <u>e</u> s	map <u>s</u>	cat <u>s</u>	sh <u>y</u>
sh <u>ocked</u>	arm <u>s</u>	contain <u>s</u>	choos <u>e</u> s	eat <u>s</u>			
/s/		/z/			/iz/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. A. book <u>s</u>	B. map <u>s</u>	C. meal <u>s</u>	D. stuff <u>s</u>
2. A. ride <u>s</u>	B. laugh <u>s</u>	C. look <u>s</u>	D. kick <u>s</u>
3. A. watch <u>e</u> s	B. choos <u>e</u> s	C. los <u>e</u> s	D. lov <u>e</u> s
4. A. call <u>s</u>	B. miss <u>e</u> s	C. beg <u>s</u>	D. describ <u>e</u> s
5. A. chang <u>e</u> s	B. wash <u>e</u> s	C. chas <u>e</u> s	D. exam <u>s</u>
6. A. door <u>s</u>	B. pencil <u>s</u>	C. ris <u>e</u> s	D. coin <u>s</u>
7. A. seas <u>on</u>	B. bus <u></u>	C. crisi <u>s</u>	D. Christma <u>s</u>
8. A. resul <u>t</u>	B. mus <u>i</u> c	C. sch <u>oo</u> l	D. closet

9. A. u <u>s</u>	B. hi <u>s</u>	C. plu <u>s</u> .	D. bu <u>s</u>
10. A. ci <u>t</u> izen	B. ci <u>r</u> cle	C. su <u>c</u> cess	D. no <u>s</u> e

**Exercise 3: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. country	B. birthday	C. machine	D. cover
2. A. success	B. paper	C. mother	D. pleasure
3. A. farmer	B. enjoy	C. blessing	D. lecture
4. A. prepare	B. await	C. persuade	D. marriage
5. A. conduct	B. story	C. many	D. fairy
6. A. healthy	B. quiet	C. abroad	D. standard
7. A. suppose	B. accept	C. approach	D. hundred
8. A. explain	B. survey	C. temper	D. science
9. A. sudden	B. noisy	C. remain	D. thoughtful
10. A. complain	B. happen	C. inspire	D. adopt

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Choose between *in/ on/at* and fill in the blank.**

- Sarah is arriving \_\_\_\_\_ October the 13<sup>th</sup> \_\_\_\_\_ nine o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.
- I had a party \_\_\_\_\_ my 18<sup>th</sup> birthday.
- The weather is often terrible \_\_\_\_\_ Hanoi \_\_\_\_\_ February.
- It's better to get taxi if you are out alone \_\_\_\_\_ night.
- She's getting married \_\_\_\_\_ August.
- They usually go to the north \_\_\_\_\_ winter to experience the cold weather.
- Anna went to Los Angeles \_\_\_\_\_ New Year's Eve.
- The class starts 10 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday mornings.
- Christopher Columbus sailed to the America \_\_\_\_\_ the 16<sup>th</sup> century.
- ABBA were popular \_\_\_\_\_ the 1970s.
- graduated from Cornell University \_\_\_\_\_ 2005.
- My birthday is \_\_\_\_\_ November.
- I like to drink tea \_\_\_\_\_ the morning and smoothie \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas, I usually go to my parents' house. We usually have dinner together \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Day.
- Peter left Paris \_\_\_\_\_ the 5<sup>th</sup> of May.

16. The train leaves tomorrow afternoon \_\_\_\_\_ 4 o'clock.
17. I love going swimming \_\_\_\_\_ the summer.
18. We went out for lunch \_\_\_\_\_ 1 p.m yesterday.
19. We met at the theatre \_\_\_\_\_ 9 p.m.
20. We are hanging out \_\_\_\_\_ lunchtime this Wednesday.

**Exercise 2: Put the word in the correct group.**

October	night	the morning	Friday evenings	Christmas
the evenings	May 7 <sup>th</sup>	the same time	Easter	Christmas Day
bedtime	the autumn	Saturdays 1930	lunchtime	Halloween
November	Mondays	Independence Day	dawn	this century
10.15 a.m.	the future	January 24, 2005	the 1900s	Mother’s Day
6 o’clock	noon	your birthday	New Year’s Eve	6 o’clock
the afternoon	9 p.m.	the 20 <sup>th</sup> century	the Jurassic Period	
the past	November, 2010		Sunday evenings	
in				
on				
at				

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with *There is/There are*.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of news about Covid-19 on the Internet.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ not so many people in the park today.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a supermarket near my house.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of motorbikes on the street.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a huge pile of dirty dishes in the sink. Can you do the washing-up please?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ a few candies in the box.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ three coins in my pocket.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ one piece of paper in my bag.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ ten oranges in the bowl.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ a boy and a girl playing in the yard.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ some milk in the fridge.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of snow outside.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ some people in the bedroom.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ no money in my account. I'm broke.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ no clouds in the sky.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ a cat and two dogs in the garden.
17. \_\_\_\_\_ a large bowl of apples.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ a man walking on the street.
19. \_\_\_\_\_ some girls singing.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ clothes everywhere in my room.

**Exercise 4: Choose the suitable word.**

1. Things are not going well for Sarah at work. She has *a few / much / a little* problems.
2. I don't know much Chinese. I can only speak *much / a few / few* words.
3. Peter is very busy at work. He has *little / some / many* time for his family.
4. These oranges look nice. Should we buy *many / some / little*?
5. Can you give me *some / many / much* information about the restaurants in town please?
6. I want to buy *much / many / a few* pairs of sunglasses.
7. Do you like to spend *some / many / few* time going on a walk with me today?
8. Be careful! There are *much / many / few* cars on the road.
9. There was *much / little / a little* traffic, so the trip didn't take so long.
10. Can I borrow you *a few / few / a little* dollars, Anna?
11. This is the dry season of our country. We've had *little / few / much* rain recently.
12. I have been to Venice for *many / much / few* times.
13. There are *many / little / much* ancient buildings in Hanoi.
14. Can I have *some / many / much* water, please? I'm thirsty.
15. This project has *much / many / few* problems, we need to fix it right away.

**Exercise 5: See the picture and write a description with *There is/ There are* based on the hints given. You may have to change the form of the words given into plural form.**

1.



(building / England)

---

2.



(plane / sky)

---

3.



(person street)

---

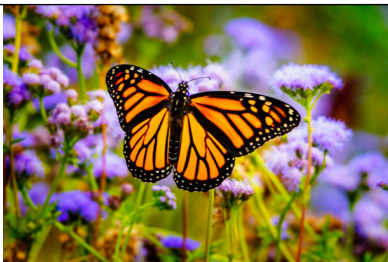
4.



(orange / basket)

---

5.



(butterfly / garden)

**Exercise 6: Complete the questions with *many/much*.**

1. How \_\_\_\_\_ tables do we need?
2. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ tea left in the teapot?
3. How \_\_\_\_\_ homework do you have?
4. How \_\_\_\_\_ money is there in your account?
5. How \_\_\_\_\_ cheese do you want to buy?
6. How \_\_\_\_\_ boys are there in your class?
7. Are there \_\_\_\_\_ boxes in the drawer?
8. How \_\_\_\_\_ bread is left in the fridge?
9. How \_\_\_\_\_ time do you often spend on learning English?
10. How \_\_\_\_\_ coffee do you want?

**Exercise 7: Complete the answers to questions in Exercise 5 using *a little/a few*.**

1. We need \_\_\_\_\_ tables, maybe 5 more.
2. There is \_\_\_\_\_ tea left, do you want some?
3. I have \_\_\_\_\_ homework to do, I can't go to the movies tonight.
4. I have \_\_\_\_\_ money in my account.
5. I want \_\_\_\_\_ more cheese, it is my favourite!
6. There are \_\_\_\_\_ boys in my class, but I don't remember the exact number.
7. There are \_\_\_\_\_ boxes in the drawer in my room.
8. There is \_\_\_\_\_ bread left in the fridge.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ hours a day if I have enough time.
10. I just want \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. I don't really like coffee.

**Exercise 8: Fill in the blank with a suitable word.**

Anna was born (1) \_\_\_\_\_ October 24<sup>th</sup>, 2011. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ now studying (3) \_\_\_\_\_ International Secondary School. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the morning, she usually wakes up at 7 am, eats breakfast and goes to school (5) \_\_\_\_\_ about 7:30. Today is Saturday, so she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ staying at home with her parents. There (7) \_\_\_\_\_ 3 dogs in Anna's house. They are called Simon, Cloud and Cream. Anna takes them (8) \_\_\_\_\_ a walk every day. Anna (9) \_\_\_\_\_ a kind-hearted girl. Although she (10) \_\_\_\_\_ just 11 years old, she always wants to help others.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. rings <u>s</u>	B. feeds <u>s</u>	C. shaves <u>s</u>	D. wakes <u>s</u>
2. A. exercises <u>s</u>	B. fixes <u>s</u>	C. combs <u>s</u>	D. brushes <u>s</u>
3. A. puts <u>s</u>	B. drives <u>s</u>	C. picks <u>s</u>	D. gets <u>s</u>
4. A. <u>b</u> rief	B. <u>b</u> oy	C. comb <u>b</u>	D. <u>b</u> uild
5. A. <u>c</u> limb	B. <u>c</u> ool	C. <u>c</u> ity	D. <u>c</u> ook

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. dessert	B. desert	C. record	D. divide
2. A. exciting	B. handsome	C. rainbow	D. lovely
3. A. forgive	B. behave	C. protest	D. contest
4. A. plastic	B. photograph	C. cooker	D. maintain
5. A. computer	B. decide	C. device	D. orchid

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with one suitable preposition.**

1. She's looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ going to the movies tomorrow.
2. I'm doing great today. How \_\_\_\_\_ you, Sarah?
3. Thank you \_\_\_\_\_ giving me a lift tonight.
4. People have to find solution \_\_\_\_\_ environmental issues.
5. There is an old man walking \_\_\_\_\_ the street.
6. I am fed up \_\_\_\_\_ doing exercises every morning.
7. Let me tell you \_\_\_\_\_ my studying plan.
8. This book sounds really interesting \_\_\_\_\_ me.
9. My brother is keen \_\_\_\_\_ playing sports.
10. Are you fond \_\_\_\_\_ playing the piano?

**Exercise 4: Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition.**

1. I have been waiting \_\_\_\_\_ my friend for an hour, but she seems to forget the time.
2. There's no need to worry \_\_\_\_\_ your exam results - you have tried your best.
3. Remember to pay \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper.
4. Mark tried to explain the words \_\_\_\_\_ me.
5. She will arrive \_\_\_\_\_ Germany at 4 p.m.

6. She is always listening \_\_\_\_\_ the radio while I am sleeping.
7. He borrowed \$50 \_\_\_\_\_ his mom to buy new shoes.
8. Who does this phone belong \_\_\_\_\_?
9. Stop talking and focus \_\_\_\_\_ your work.
10. Which university you are going to depends \_\_\_\_\_ this final exam.

**Exercise 5: Write the sentences with *There is/There are* using the words given.**

1. some girls/ walking/ street/.

---

2. no/ milk/ left/ fridge/.

---

3. a dog/garden/?

---

4. some water bottles/ desk/.

---

5. a hamburger and a pizza/ fridge/.

---

6. one of my friends/ who/ playing/ volleyball/ over there/.

---

7. not/ any/ tea/ left/ teapot/.

---

8. any/ chairs/ your classroom/?

---

9. a dog and a cat/ park/.

---

10. a calculator/ my desk/.

---

**Exercise 6: Fill in the blank with a suitable quantifier. You may use some words twice.**

<i>none</i>	<i>both</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>any</i>	<i>every</i>	<i>some</i>	<i>little</i>	<i>many</i>
-------------	-------------	-------------	------------	--------------	-------------	---------------	-------------

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Daniel and Sarah were in a disagreement about the cost of the car.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ time I see this movie, I think about my mother.
3. If I give you some cash, can you buy \_\_\_\_\_ milk and vegetables for me?

4. \_\_\_\_\_ of the students got an A in Maths, so the teacher was really upset.
5. Sarah has so \_\_\_\_\_ free time that she can do everything she wants.
6. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ water left in the bottle? I'm thirsty.
7. There were \_\_\_\_\_ people on the street today. It took me so long to get home.
8. I get up at 7 a.m \_\_\_\_\_ day.
9. You have \_\_\_\_\_ knowledge of what it takes to be successful.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ my cat and my dog love eating meat.

**Exercise 7: Find the mistakes and correct them. If the sentence is right, write 'Correct'.**

1. Are there any questions about this part of our presentation? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Daniel is a respected doctor; lot of people came to his retirement party. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Nearly each person I met that day wore fancy clothes. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Many of the people around the world want to visit Hanoi. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Both of my brothers went to my graduation day. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Are there little chairs left in the room? \_\_\_\_\_
7. None of your emails is replied by the boss. \_\_\_\_\_
8. There were some photos taken here last night. \_\_\_\_\_
9. If you have much questions about your exam score, ask me. \_\_\_\_\_
10. There's many news we have not known yet, let's just hope for the best. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 8: Read the passage and decide if the following statements are True or False.**

### Smart Home

A smart home means your home has a smart home system that connects with your appliances to automate specific tasks and is typically remotely controlled. You can use a smart home system to program your sprinklers, set and monitor your home security system and cameras, or control appliances like your refrigerator or air conditioning and heating.

Many Americans are looking into smart homes ideas, how smart homes work, or specific task automation for benefits like these:

1. Smart homes allow you to have greater control of your energy use, all while automating things like adjusting temperature, turning on and off lights, opening and closing window treatments, and adjusting irrigation based on the weather.

2. Smart homes provide insights into energy use that can help you become more energy efficient and mindful of ecological factors. Smart homes can pinpoint areas where you're using more energy than you need to, allowing you to cut back in those areas and save money.
3. And while it might sound like just another passing fad to some, the smart home—like the smartphone—is here to stay. With over 80 million smart home devices delivered worldwide in 2016, some predict that number will grow to over 130 million smart home devices by the end of 2017.

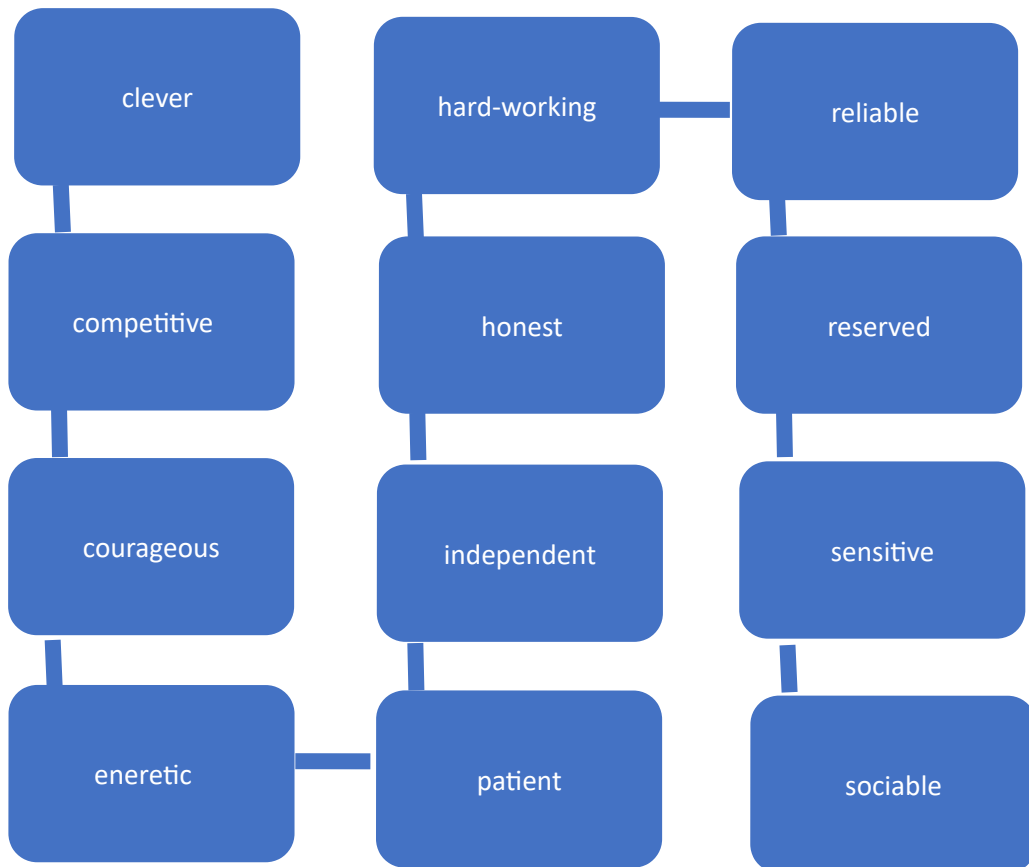
(Source: <https://www.constellation.com/>)

1. \_\_\_\_\_ In a smart house, appliances can be remotely controlled via a connected system.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The smart home system is only used to control security system.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ You can control the amount of energy used in your house using the smart system.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Smart home owners can be more aware of environmental factors.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The smart home model will soon lose its appeal.

# UNIT 3: MY FRIEND

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng



### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Phát âm: /id/, /t/, vs. /d/ (Cách phát âm đuôi -ed)

Có 3 cách phát âm đuôi -ed, phụ thuộc vào âm tận cùng của từ như sau:

/ɪd/						
Các âm tận cùng						Ví dụ
/t/ và /d/						• needed • wanted • decided
t, d						
/t/						
Các âm tận cùng						Ví dụ
/s/	/ʃ/	/tʃ/	/k/	/p/	/f/	• danced • kissed • fixed • washed • watched • marked • helped  • coughed • sniffed
ce, ss, x, sh, ch, k, p, f, gh						
/z/						
Các âm còn lại						Ví dụ
						• played • allowed • travelled

## 2. Trọng âm của từ với đuôi -tion, -ian

Trọng âm của từ thường rơi vào âm tiết đứng trước hậu tố -ion và -ian.

information	/ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃn/	description	/dɪˈskrɪpʃn/
nation	/ˈneɪʃn/	alteration	/ˌɔːltəˈneɪʃn/
politician	/ˌpɒləˈtɪʃn	musician	/ˌmjuːzɪˈtɪʃn/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn dùng để diễn tả tương lai (The present continuous for future)

Thì hiện tại đơn và thì hiện tại tiếp diễn đều có thể dùng để diễn tả những hành động, sự việc trong tương lai.

Thì hiện tại đơn	Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn
Nói về lịch làm việc, thời gian biểu ảnh hưởng tới nhiều người và không thể tùy ý thay đổi (chẳng hạn như lịch trình tàu xe, lịch chiếu phim, giờ mở cửa của trung tâm thương mại hay bảo tàng, etc.).	Nói về những hành động đã chuẩn bị kế hoạch sẵn của cá nhân hoặc một nhóm cá nhân, thường có thời gian cụ thể.

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

		K					
	2					G	
3				I			
	4		R				
						D	
							Y

- KEY WORD: \_\_\_\_\_

1. I expect you will answer my questions with \_\_\_\_\_. HONEST
2. Her continuous complaint is testing my \_\_\_\_\_. PATIENT
3. I hope that he is as \_\_\_\_\_ as he looks. RELY
4. I have always wanted to be \_\_\_\_\_ of my parents. DEPEND
5. Many classmates like her because she's \_\_\_\_\_ to others' feelings. SENSE
6. Alan has heart disease so he can't participate in \_\_\_\_\_ activities. ENERGY
7. Children can be \_\_\_\_\_, but they should also learn to work in a team. COMPETITION
8. I hope to befriend with people who are \_\_\_\_\_ and dare to take responsibility of their mistakes. COURAGE
9. Mark has very warm \_\_\_\_\_. That's why people like him. PERSONAL
10. People should be \_\_\_\_\_ for whatever they say or do. RESPONSIBILITY
11. I hope to gain more \_\_\_\_\_ when I get older. WISE
12. I have tried to be \_\_\_\_\_ but I don't know what to say to other people. SOCIAL

13. It is important to treat other people with \_\_\_\_\_. KIND
14. She has a great sense of \_\_\_\_\_. HUMOROUS
15. Artists or performers have to be extremely \_\_\_\_\_. CREATE

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. A. laugh <u>ed</u>	B. mov <u>ed</u>	C. list <u>en</u> ed	D. clean <u>ed</u>
2. A. ask <u>ed</u>	B. collect <u>ed</u>	C. start <u>ed</u>	D. wait <u>ed</u>
3. A. start <u>ed</u>	B. call <u>ed</u>	C. claim <u>ed</u>	D. offer <u>ed</u>
4. A. believ <u>ed</u>	B. scream <u>ed</u>	C. watch <u>ed</u>	D. inspir <u>ed</u>
5. A. paint <u>ed</u>	B. look <u>ed</u>	C. finish <u>ed</u>	D. cough <u>ed</u>
6. A. improv <u>ed</u>	B. phon <u>ed</u>	C. order <u>ed</u>	D. correct <u>ed</u>
7. A. end <u>ed</u>	B. need <u>ed</u>	C. talk <u>ed</u>	D. educat <u>ed</u>
8. A. lov <u>ed</u>	B. nak <u>ed</u>	C. strengthen <u>ed</u>	D. weaken <u>ed</u>
9. A. continu <u>ed</u>	B. stay <u>ed</u>	C. copi <u>ed</u>	D. paint <u>ed</u>
10. A. travel <u>ed</u>	B. walk <u>ed</u>	C. play <u>ed</u>	D. explain <u>ed</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. calculation	B. activation	C. information	D. correction
2. A. musician	B. logician	C. Indian	D. addiction
3. A. adoption	B. electrician	C. Brazilian	D. abstraction
4. A. expression	B. librarian	C. version	D. historian
5. A. magician	B. companion	C. generation	D. procession
6. A. competition	B. vegetarian	C. institution	D. reunion
7. A. preservation	B. Italian	C. politician	D. graduation
8. A. reputation	B. emotion	C. direction	D. invention
9. A. attraction	B. conduction	C. suggestion	D. commemoration
10. A. Egyptian	B. construction	C. introduction	D. reduction

**Exercise 3: Find 10 words with -ed and put them into the suitable column based on their pronunciation.**

The 14<sup>th</sup> of November is widely known as Children's Day in India. It tells the importance of children's rights, education, and their care. The day is regarded as Birth Anniversary of Pt. Jawaharlal Nehru. Children are tender creatures. Their upbringing is linked with the future of the nation. Children's Day

focused on abolishing this unfortunate reality of our nation. Across the nation, a glimpse of academic level celebration events is observed on this day. On the eve of Children's Day, schools are decorated, and children are greeted with small token gifts. Various government schemes are also launched. Free education for rural areas and slum areas is offered by the government. In some schools, teachers also take part in sports and other events. They are welcomed to compete with students like in kabaddi or cricket competition. These activities are organized to maintain student-teacher bond.

/t/	/d/	/id/

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Use Present Simple tense to fill in the blank with the correct word form.**

1. What time (the bus to Venice/ depart) \_\_\_\_\_?
2. The movie (start) \_\_\_\_\_ at 7 o'clock this evening.
3. The art exhibition (close) \_\_\_\_\_ at 9 p.m.
4. The documentary (end) \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 o'clock.
5. We (have) \_\_\_\_\_ art lesson at 11:00 every morning.
6. What time (the museum/ open) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow?
7. This French restaurant (open) \_\_\_\_\_ at 9:00 a.m.
8. The plane to Los Angeles (depart) \_\_\_\_\_ at half past ten.
9. Our favourite film (start) \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:00 on channel 5.
10. What time (our school/ open) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning?

**Exercise 2: Use Present Continuous tense to fill in the blank.**

1. What (you/ do) \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow afternoon?
2. I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ my grandparents this weekend.
3. Where (Sarah/ go) \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday evening?
4. They (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a Maths lesson on the next Monday.
5. She (cook) \_\_\_\_\_ delicious food for her son's birthday tomorrow.
6. Peter (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ by plane to Paris next week.
7. Anna (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ her friend in Hanoi this evening.
8. I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema tonight.

9. Our students (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a very difficult Chemistry test next week.
10. My sister (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ to Paris tomorrow evening.

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the suitable form of the word given.**

1. The Sydney flight (land) \_\_\_\_\_ at 7:30.
2. Tomorrow (be) \_\_\_\_\_ Vietnam's Independence Day.
3. The flight (depart) \_\_\_\_\_ at 7 o'clock in the morning.
4. Sarah and Peter (get) \_\_\_\_\_ married this weekend.
5. The Graduation Ceremony (start) \_\_\_\_\_ at 9 a.m tomorrow.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/do) anything tomorrow afternoon?
7. The exhibition (take) \_\_\_\_\_ place on this Sunday.
8. My dad (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to work by car tomorrow.
9. What time (you/meet) \_\_\_\_\_ Peter on Monday?
10. I (not/do) \_\_\_\_\_ anything tonight, I'm so tired.

**Exercise 4: Choose the suitable word to fill in the blank.**

1. We *leave / are leaving* on a jet plane early tomorrow morning.
2. The concert *takes place / is taking place* every other month.
3. The school year *starts / is starting* on September 5<sup>th</sup>.
4. We *set off / are setting off* on our family trip to France tomorrow.
5. We *fly / are flying* to Venice on Sunday evening.
6. Anna *arrives / is arriving* at around half past ten.
7. I *go / am going* to the airport to meet Hang tomorrow morning.
8. The Fine Arts Museum *closes / is closing* in three hours.
9. Tomorrow the sun *rises / is rising* at 5:30 according to the weather forecast.
10. Our flight *departs / is departing* at 7 o'clock tomorrow.
11. I *take part / am taking part* in the English Competition next week.
12. We *are going/go* shopping on Monday evening.
13. We *are not doing/do not do* anything tonight, just stay in and watch TV.
14. The supermarket *opens / is opening* on the next Monday after reconstruction.
15. The contest *takes place / is taking place* at Giang Vo Secondary School next week.

**Exercise 5: Correct the mistake in each sentence.**

1. Do you do anything tonight? \_\_\_\_\_

2. I go to the hospital this afternoon. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Where do you go for your holiday this summer? \_\_\_\_\_
4. The train is leaving at 10:15. \_\_\_\_\_
5. What time the flight lands today? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Sarah and Peter is leaving to Paris tomorrow morning. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The summer term classes are ending on May 25<sup>th</sup>. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Do you give Anna anything for her birthday this year? \_\_\_\_\_
9. The concert is beginning at 6 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I go to France to visit my friend this summer. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 6: Choose a suitable preposition of place: in/ on/ at.**

1. He's swimming \_\_\_\_\_ the pool near his house.
2. 'Where's Sarah?' - 'She's \_\_\_\_\_ school studying.'
3. The flower vase is \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
4. Sarah is watering the flowers \_\_\_\_\_ the garden.
5. There is a cockroach \_\_\_\_\_ the sink. That's disgusting.
6. Please put those oranges \_\_\_\_\_ the bowl, Han.
7. Peter is going \_\_\_\_\_ holiday for 2 weeks.
8. There is an interesting program \_\_\_\_\_ TV this evening. Let's watch it together!
9. There are two pairs of sunglasses \_\_\_\_\_ my bag.
10. I read this story \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper yesterday. It's really interesting.
11. The dog is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the chair.
12. Look! Daniel is standing \_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop.
13. I have been staying \_\_\_\_\_ home the whole week. I want to go outside now.
14. I'll see you \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant this evening.
15. She hung a picture of her family \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.
16. Sarah is \_\_\_\_\_ the bus, she'll be here in 10 minutes.
17. Tell your brother to not sit \_\_\_\_\_ the table. Everyone's looking at him.
18. There are five cushions \_\_\_\_\_ the sofa in our living room.
19. Mr. Swift is \_\_\_\_\_ hospital, he is sick.
20. Look! There is a butterfly \_\_\_\_\_ our garden.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>with</u>	B. <u>what</u>	C. <u>whole</u>	D. <u>which</u>
2. A. <u>pleasure</u>	B. <u>heat</u>	C. <u>teach</u>	D. <u>meat</u>
3. A. talk <u>ed</u>	B. ask <u>ed</u>	C. lik <u>ed</u>	D. educat <u>ed</u>
4. A. <u>hear</u>	B. <u>clear</u>	C. <u>dear</u>	D. <u>bear</u>
5. A. <u>unique</u>	B. <u>unite</u>	C. <u>universe</u>	D. <u>undo</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. attention	B. collection	C. intention	D. energy
2. A. shoulder	B. advise	C. agree	D. allow
3. A. manage	B. collage	C. honest	D. companion
4. A. issue	B. passion	C. comparison	D. tissue
5. A. disease	B. coffee	C. chemistry	D. campus

**Exercise 3: Choose a suitable preposition to fill in the blank.**

1. Hanoi is known *with/for/about* its delicious street food.
2. Hang is very pleased *with/for/about* her IELTS score.
3. I am very proud *on/of/at* my sister, she got a 100% scholarship.
4. I've been married *with/to/at* my wife for over a decade.
5. Anna is very different *with/for/from* her sister. They are always arguing.
6. I'm bad *in/with/at* music. I can't sing a song.
7. Are you afraid *on/of/at* sharks?
8. That suit he's wearing is very similar *with/to/of* mine.
9. I'm very excited *about/in/at* buying a new car.
10. Peter is extremely good *in/on/at* learning languages. She can speak 4 languages now.

**Exercise 4: Complete the sentences, using either present simple or present continuous.**

1. Sarah/ visit/ Paris/ next month/.

- 
2. Our English lesson/ start/ 9 o'clock/ tomorrow/.

- 
3. My brother and I/ go/ cinema/ this evening/.

---

4. The 'Avatar' movie/ end/ half past ten/.

---

5. The summer camp/ start/ May 15<sup>th</sup>/.

---

6. I/ fly/ Italia/ next week/.

---

7. you/ move/ England/ next month/?

---

8. My friends/ attend/ a music festival/ the next Monday/.

---

9. The online class/ start/ 7 a.m./ tomorrow/.

---

10. The exhibition/ close/ 9 o'clock/.

---

**Exercise 5: Complete the dialogue using the words in brackets.**

1. A: (where/go/?)

---

B: Vietnam.

2. A: (how long/go for/?)

---

B: About two weeks.

3. A: (when/leave/?)

---

B: Tomorrow morning.

4. A: (when/flight/depart/?)

---

B: 10 o'clock.

5. A: (how long/take/get/there/?)

---

B: About two hours.

6. A: (go/friends/?)

---

B: No, just me.

7. A: (where/stay/?)

---

B: In my uncle's house.

8. A: (when/come back/?)

---

B: On October 24<sup>th</sup>.

**Exercise 6: Based on a student schedule, complete the dialogue with the words given.**

## Grade six

Lessons		1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Time	From	8:00	9:00	10:00	11:00	12:00	1:00	2:00
	To	9:00	10:00	11:00	12:00	1:00	2:00	3:00
Sunday		English	Arabic	Sport	History	Art	Math	Science
Monday		Sport	English	Arabic	Science	Math	History	.....
Tuesday		English	Sport	Math	Arabic	English	Sport	Art
Wednesday		English	Science	Math	History	Sport	Art	.....
Thursday		Art	Sport	English	Math	Science	Arabic	.....

1. A: (when/English lesson/Monday morning/start/?)

---

B: It \_\_\_\_\_.

2. A: (how many/English lessons/Tuesday/?)

---

B: There \_\_\_\_\_.

3. A: (when/Sport lesson/end/Tuesday afternoon/?)

---

B: It \_\_\_\_\_.

4. A: When \_\_\_\_\_?

B: It starts at 10 a.m. on Wednesday morning.

5. A: When \_\_\_\_\_?

B: It ends at 2 p.m. on Thursday.

**Exercise 7: Identify 10 mistakes in the paragraph and correct them.**

Hi, everyone! Here's what I do this weekend.

After a long week's study, I watch TV on Saturday morning in order to relax myself. I am loving reading books very much, so I go to a bookstore on Saturday afternoon. There are many interesting books, and I can buy some of them. In the evening, I go to the cinema with my family. We watch a film called 'Zootopia'. The film is starting at 7 o'clock and lasting for about 1 hour and a half.

On Sunday, I visit my grandparents because I miss them very much. After coming back, I am getting ready for next week class. In particular, I review the notes that I took in the class.

1. _____	6. _____
2. _____	7. _____
3. _____	8. _____
4. _____	9. _____
5. _____	10. _____

# UNIT 4: MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

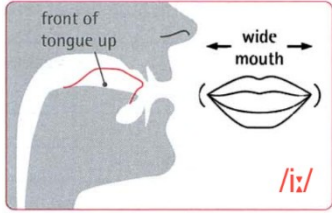
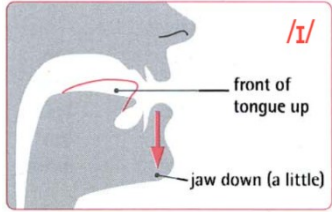
### I. Từ vựng

		
railway station <i>ga tàu</i>	temple <i>đền, chùa</i>	palace <i>cung điện</i>
		
square <i>quảng trường</i>	art gallery <i>triển lãm nghệ thuật</i>	skyscraper <i>tòa nhà chọc trời</i>
		
memorial <i>đài tưởng niệm</i>	cathedral <i>nhà thờ</i>	statue <i>tượng</i>

Words to describe a neighbourhood					
(in)convenient	historic	polluted	peaceful	terrible	modern

## II. Ngữ âm

### 1. Phát âm: /i:/ & /ɪ/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Môi	Lưỡi	Minh họa
/i:/	Dài	Môi mở rộng sang hai bên như đang mỉm cười	Lưỡi nâng cao lên.	
/ɪ/	Ngắn	Môi hơi mở rộng sang hai bên	Lưỡi hạ thấp	

• Âm /i:/ có thể được nhận diện trong các từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- ee	see	agree	cheese
- ea	eat	seat	team
- ie	field	piece	
- e	these	secret	equal
- i	ski	pizza	police

• Âm /ɪ/ có thể được nhận diện bằng chữ cái “i”:

if	listen	miss	dinner
swim	in	six	picture

### 2. Trọng âm của từ với đuôi -ic, -ical

Trọng âm của từ thường rơi vào âm tiết đứng trước hậu tố -ic và -ical.

electric	/ɪˈlektrɪk/	musical	/'mju:zɪkl/
characteristic	/ˌkærəktəˈrɪstɪk/	historical	/hɪˈstɒrɪkl/
fantastic	/fænˈtæstɪk/	magical	/'mædʒɪkl/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Cấu trúc so sánh hơn

• Ta sử dụng so sánh hơn của tính từ để so sánh giữa người (hoặc vật) này với người (hoặc vật) khác.

Trong câu so sánh hơn, tính từ sẽ được chia làm hai loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn, trong đó:

- Tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết. Ví dụ: tall, high, big, ...

- Tính từ dài là những tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên.

Đối với tính từ ngắn	Đối với tính từ/ dài
S + to be + <b>adj-er + than</b> + sb/sth/ clause E.g. <i>Peter is stronger than me.</i>	S + to be + <b>more + adj + than</b> + sb/sth/ clause E.g. <i>This dress is more expensive than I think.</i>

• Để nhấn mạnh so sánh, ta có thể thêm một số từ chỉ mức độ (intensifiers) vào trước tính từ hoặc trạng từ như sau:

<b>much</b>	<b>a lot</b>	<b>far</b>	<b>a bit</b>	<b>a little</b>	<b>slightly</b>
-------------	--------------	------------	--------------	-----------------	-----------------

- *I was sick yesterday, but I feel much better now.*

- *I think that dress is a lot more expensive than its worth.*

- *I can't make out what you're saying. Could you speak a bit louder?*

## 2. Cách sử dụng tính từ trong câu so sánh hơn.

### a. Cách thêm đuôi -er vào tính từ ngắn

Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 phụ âm → thêm đuôi -er	old - older near - nearer
Tính từ kết thúc bởi nguyên âm 'e' → chỉ cần thêm đuôi 'r'	nice - nicer
Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i) + 1 phụ âm → gấp đôi phụ âm cuối và thêm đuôi -er	big - bigger hot - hotter
Tính từ kết thúc bởi 'y', dù có 2 âm tiết vẫn là tính từ ngắn → bỏ 'y' và thêm đuôi 'ier'	happy - happier pretty - prettier

• Lưu ý: Một số tính từ có hai âm tiết kết thúc bằng -et, -ow, -le, -er, -y thì áp dụng quy tắc thêm đuôi -er như tính từ ngắn.

Ví dụ: quiet → quieter; clever → cleverer; simple → simpler, narrow → narrower

### b. Một vài tính từ đặc biệt

Với một số tính từ sau, dạng so sánh hơn của chúng không theo quy tắc trên.

Tính từ	Dạng so sánh hơn
good	better
bad	worse
far	farther/further
much/many	more
little	less
old	older/elder

### 3. Một số cấu trúc so sánh thường gặp

#### a. Cấu trúc any/no + tính từ so sánh

Cấu trúc *any/no + tính từ so sánh* thường được sử dụng để diễn đạt một thông tin mang tính phủ định, không còn duy trì tình trạng trước đây.

- *I've waited for hours. I will not wait for them any longer.*
- *That apartment is in the centre, but it's no more expensive than ours in the suburbs.*
- *You were sick yesterday. Do you feel any better now?*

#### b. Cấu trúc so sánh lặp

Cấu trúc so sánh lặp (*better and better, ...*) có thể được sử dụng để nói về những sự thay đổi có tính tiếp diễn.

- *Your English is improving. It's getting better and better.*
- *More and more tourists are visiting this part of the country.*
- *Due to industrialisation, the climate is getting warmer and warmer.*

#### c. Cấu trúc so sánh kép

Cấu trúc so sánh kép (*the... the...*) có thể được sử dụng để nói về những sự việc xảy ra có tính phụ thuộc, hành động này kéo theo hành động kia.

- *The sooner we leave, the earlier we 'll arrive.*
- *People think that the more expensive the hotel is, the better the service is.*
- *Producers expect that the more advertisements they display, the more customers they will attract.*

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Match the word in column A with its antonym in column B.**

Column A		Column B
1. narrow	_____	a. chaotic
2. cheap	_____	b. modern
3. exciting	_____	c. inconvenient
4. noisy	_____	d. smart
5. light	_____	e. boring
6. friendly	_____	f. quiet

7. sleepy	_____	g. fantastic
8. peaceful	_____	h. awake
9. historical	_____	i. expensive
10. convenient	_____	j. broad
		k. heavy
		l. rude

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given in capital.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_: important in history; likely to be thought of as important at some time in the future
2. \_\_\_\_\_: the official home of a king, queen, etc.
3. \_\_\_\_\_: a very large, usually stone, building for Christian worship. It is the largest and most important church of a diocese
4. \_\_\_\_\_: quiet and calm; not worried or upset in any way
5. \_\_\_\_\_: affected by pollution
6. \_\_\_\_\_: a statue, stone, etc. that is built in order to remind people of an important past event or of a famous person who has died
7. \_\_\_\_\_: an open area in a town, usually with four sides, surrounded by buildings
8. \_\_\_\_\_: without any order; in a completely confused state
9. \_\_\_\_\_: a building used for religious worship, especially in religions such as Buddhist/Hindu
10. \_\_\_\_\_: a very tall building in a city

**Exercise 3: Complete the following sentences using the words given.**

<i>polluted</i>	<i>inconvenient</i>	<i>modern</i>	<i>terrible</i>	<i>peaceful</i>
<i>fantastic</i>	<i>historic</i>	<i>hectic</i>	<i>narrow</i>	<i>ancient</i>

1. Tourists usually visit cultural heritage attractions such as \_\_\_\_\_ buildings and other attractions.
2. Living in the countryside is \_\_\_\_\_ due to fewer hospitals, schools, and other modern facilities compared to in big cities.
3. Many beautiful beaches in Vietnam are getting more and more \_\_\_\_\_ because of waste from tourist activities.
4. The traffic in cities is far more \_\_\_\_\_ than on the outskirts. People have to face heavy traffic even when it is not rush hour.

5. I prefer \_\_\_\_\_ apartments with advanced technology and smart furniture to villas in a quiet neighbourhood.
6. The area is quiet and has become a haven for people tired of the \_\_\_\_\_ pace of city life.
7. Hoi An \_\_\_\_\_ town is recognized as an exceptionally well-preserved example of a Southeast Asian trading port.
8. Not only tourists but also residents can get confused by \_\_\_\_\_ roads in Vietnam's neighbourhoods.
9. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to take an evening stroll and explore the lantern-lit streets in Hoi An Old Town.
10. They want to find an accommodation in a \_\_\_\_\_ part of the town, and don't have to worry about crime or robbery.

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. A. <u>beat</u>	B. <u>eat</u>	C. <u>chip</u>	D. <u>piece</u>
2. A. <u>green</u>	B. <u>piss</u>	C. <u>it</u>	D. <u>fit</u>
3. A. <u>hip</u>	B. <u>ill</u>	C. <u>sit</u>	D. <u>scene</u>
4. A. <u>deep</u>	B. <u>eel</u>	C. <u>each</u>	D. <u>dip</u>
5. A. <u>feel</u>	B. <u>cheap</u>	C. <u>fill</u>	D. <u>beach</u>
6. A. <u>tick</u>	B. <u>leak</u>	C. <u>heap</u>	D. <u>teach</u>
7. A. <u>live</u>	B. <u>meat</u>	C. <u>business</u>	D. <u>grin</u>
8. A. <u>itch</u>	B. <u>heat</u>	C. <u>heal</u>	D. <u>jeans</u>
9. A. <u>increase</u>	B. <u>peach</u>	C. <u>leave</u>	D. <u>begin</u>
10. A. <u>city</u>	B. <u>keep</u>	C. <u>little</u>	D. <u>with</u>
11. A. <u>will</u>	B. <u>in</u>	C. <u>sea</u>	D. <u>did</u>
12. A. <u>create</u>	B. <u>leaf</u>	C. <u>feature</u>	D. <u>cream</u>
13. A. <u>deal</u>	B. <u>leader</u>	C. <u>six</u>	D. <u>steal</u>
14. A. <u>team</u>	B. <u>this</u>	C. <u>will</u>	D. <u>with</u>
15. A. <u>easy</u>	B. <u>cheat</u>	C. <u>clean</u>	D. <u>busy</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. athletic	B. poetic	C. comedic	D. periodic
2. A. idiotic	B. patriotic	C. biological	D. magnetic
3. A. synthetic	B. chaotic	C. civic	D. acoustic

4. A. economic	B. economical	C. geometrical	D. graphic
5. A. linguistic	B. phonic	C. kinetic	D. aesthetic
6. A. nomadic	B. melodic	C. episodic	D. parodic
7. A. periodic	B. economical	C. biological	D. gymnastic
8. A. optical	B. political	C. statistical	D. mechanical
9. A. logistical	B. logical	C. critical	D. cynical
10. A. medical	B. topical	C. sceptical	D. academic
11. A. geological	B. ecological	C. zoological	D. logical
12. A. magical	B. clinical	C. clerical	D. historical
13. A. epithetic	B. apathetic	C. sympathetic	D. hysterical
14. A. physical	B. political	C. logistics	D. theatrical
15. A. symbiotic	B. fibrotic	C. hypnotic	D. neurotic

**Exercise 3: Put the words into the suitable columns.**

h <u>i</u> s	th <u>i</u> s	creat <u>u</u> re	w <u>i</u> ll	l <u>e</u> ad	p <u>e</u> n	d <u>re</u> am	th <u>i</u> nk	p <u>i</u> nk	r <u>i</u> ch
ach <u>ie</u> ve	pol <u>i</u> ce	she <u>ep</u>	comple <u>t</u> e	se <u>a</u>	pick	weap <u>o</u> n	wheat	heav <u>y</u>	spread
st <u>i</u> ll	stea <u>d</u> y	th <u>e</u> me	f <u>i</u> nger	peop <u>l</u> e	meas <u>u</u> re	br <u>i</u> ng	thre <u>a</u> t	ech <u>o</u>	de <u>a</u> f
<b>/ɪ/</b>			<b>/i:/</b>			<b>/e/</b>			

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Complete the sentence with the comparative form of the adjective given.**

- Russia is far (large) \_\_\_\_\_ than Vietnam.
- Ho Chi Minh City is (busy) \_\_\_\_\_ than Hanoi.
- Sarah is (competitive) \_\_\_\_\_ than her classmates.
- My garden is a lot (colourful) \_\_\_\_\_ than my neighbour's.
- Peter is (quiet) \_\_\_\_\_ than his sister.
- My English class is (interesting) \_\_\_\_\_ than my Chinese class.
- In Vietnam, the streets are generally (narrow) \_\_\_\_\_ than in the UK.
- Anna's house is a bit (comfortable) \_\_\_\_\_ than a hotel.
- My sister is (tall) \_\_\_\_\_ than me.

10. Dogs are (intelligent) \_\_\_\_\_ than pigs.

**Exercise 2: Use the words in brackets to complete the sentences. Use much/a bit etc. + a comparative form. Use *than* where necessary.**

1. The problem is \_\_\_\_\_ we thought at first. (much/ serious)

2. This apartment is too expensive. We can only afford somewhere \_\_\_\_\_. (much/cheap)

3. I liked *Minion: The Rise of Gru* although it was an animation. It was \_\_\_\_\_ I expected. (far/ interesting)

4. It was blistering yesterday. Today it's \_\_\_\_\_. (a bit/ cool)

5. I'm afraid the crime rate in this neighbourhood is \_\_\_\_\_ it seems. (much/ high)

6. You're driving too fast. Can you drive \_\_\_\_\_? (a bit/slowly)

7. I thought he was younger than me, but in fact he's \_\_\_\_\_. (slightly/old)

8. I think Hanoi offers cuisine \_\_\_\_\_ any other part of the country. (a lot/ delicious)

9. We have enough money to stay at a three-star hotel. Can you suggest somewhere that is \_\_\_\_\_ with better reputation? (slight/ expensive)

10. I find reading \_\_\_\_\_ watching movie adaptations. I would like to let my imagination run wild . (a bit/ interesting)

**Exercise 3: Complete the following sentences using the comparative and the clue given.**

1. Anna/ much/ happy/ than/ Sarah.

---

2. Peter's presentation/ far/ professional/ Daniel's.

---

3. Sarah/ talk/ a lot/ loud/ Tom.

---

4. It is raining/ much/ heavy/ yesterday.

---

5. Ruby/ live/ a lot/ far/ the station/ anyone else/ in my class.

---

6. Maths/ much/ difficult/ Literature.

---

7. A Mercedes/ much/ expensive/ a Toyota.

---

8. The clown with the blue nose/ a lot/ funny/ the other clown.

---

9. We/ look for/ much/ small/ apartment/ the one/ we/ stay/ now.

---

10. Angelina/ a lot/ beautiful/ Veronica.

---

**Exercise 4: Complete the sentence using 'no + comparative' using the word in bracket.**

1. This table is (big) \_\_\_\_\_ than I thought.

2. This shirt is (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

3. My sister is (tall) \_\_\_\_\_ than me.

4. Sarah is (intelligent) \_\_\_\_\_ than Anna.

5. Today is (sunny) \_\_\_\_\_ than yesterday.

6. I speak Chinese (good) \_\_\_\_\_ than she does.

7. This road is (convenient) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

8. The turtle is (fast) \_\_\_\_\_ than the rabbit.

9. This phone is (cheap) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

10. This blue skirt is (long) \_\_\_\_\_ than the black one.

**Exercise 5: Complete the sentence using '(not) + any + comparative' using the adjective in bracket.**

1. She is (short) \_\_\_\_\_ than me.

2. Peter does not work (hard) \_\_\_\_\_ than Sarah.

3. Is it (hot) \_\_\_\_\_ today than yesterday?

4. Does Anna sing (good) \_\_\_\_\_ than you?

5. These shoes are (dark) \_\_\_\_\_ than the others.

6. Are you staying (long) \_\_\_\_\_ than last time?

7. We are (smart) \_\_\_\_\_ than they are.

8. This room is (large) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

9. Her wedding dress is (pretty) \_\_\_\_\_ than mine.

10. Online shopping is (cheap) \_\_\_\_\_ than buying from a store.

**Exercise 6: Use repeated comparatives (e.g. better and better) to complete the sentence.**

1. The buildings in our city are becoming (tall) \_\_\_\_\_.

2. My Maths exercises get (hard) \_\_\_\_\_ every year.

3. Your English is getting (good) \_\_\_\_\_. I'm so proud of you.
4. My eyesight is getting (bad) \_\_\_\_\_. I can barely see a thing.
5. She gets (rich) \_\_\_\_\_ every month.
6. My dog is growing (big) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The Earth's temperature is becoming (high) \_\_\_\_\_ due to global warming.
8. Taylor Swift is getting (pretty) \_\_\_\_\_ over the years.
9. Our grandparents are getting (old) \_\_\_\_\_ every year.
10. The light is getting (dark) \_\_\_\_\_. I think we need to check it up.

**Exercise 7: Use the structure 'more and more + adjective' to complete the sentence.**

1. The food price is getting (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. This movie gets (interesting) \_\_\_\_\_ with every episode.
3. The lecture became (complicated) \_\_\_\_\_. I couldn't understand a thing.
4. The market for phones is becoming (competitive) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Sarah becomes (intelligent) \_\_\_\_\_. She is the smartest person in our class.
6. The world is getting (modern) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Using solar energy is becoming (economical) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. My sister grows (beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_. She looks like an angel.
9. My garden is getting (colourful) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Our exams are becoming (challenging) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 8: Use the structure 'the..., the...'** to complete the sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (old) he gets, \_\_\_\_\_ (few) work opportunities he has.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (few) mistakes you make, \_\_\_\_\_ (good) your exam score is.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (good) I know him, \_\_\_\_\_ (much) I understand him.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (fast) you drive, \_\_\_\_\_ (dangerous) it becomes.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (much) I work, \_\_\_\_\_ (experienced) I become.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (long) I wait, \_\_\_\_\_ (furious) I get.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (much) you pay, \_\_\_\_\_ (good) the quality is.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (many) candidates there are, \_\_\_\_\_ (competitive) it will be.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (angry) you become, \_\_\_\_\_ (loud) you speak.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ (busy) I am, \_\_\_\_\_ (little) time I spend with my children.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>pe</u> ace	B. h <u>i</u> t	C. k <u>i</u> ll	D. f <u>i</u> t
2. A. s <u>i</u> t	B. s <u>le</u> ep	C. s <u>i</u> ck	D. sh <u>i</u> p
3. A. call <u>e</u> d	B. play <u>e</u> d	C. bor <u>e</u> d	D. danc <u>e</u> d
4. A. cycl <u>e</u> d	B. stay <u>e</u> d	C. decid <u>e</u> d	D. lov <u>e</u> d
5. A. thr <u>e</u> ad	B. h <u>e</u> ad	C. b <u>e</u> am	D. thr <u>e</u> at

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. airport	B. around	C. station	D. movie
2. A. information	B. destination	C. oceanic	D. physical
3. A. botanical	B. parodic	C. rhapsodic	D. episodic
4. A. depart	B. departure	C. prefer	D. water
5. A. canoe	B. hotel	C. husband	D. include

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the given words to complete the following sentences.**

<i>pagoda</i>	<i>palace</i>	<i>skyscrapers</i>	<i>statue</i>
<i>memorial</i>	<i>square</i>	<i>railway</i>	<i>art gallery</i>

1. An \_\_\_\_\_ will be held this weekends to showcase the artworks of local artists.
2. Do you know that Buckingham \_\_\_\_\_ is not only a royal residence nut also the administrative headquarters of UK monarch?
3. It is commonly believed that Times \_\_\_\_\_ is New York's most famous landmark and is the liveliest area in the city.
4. One Pillar \_\_\_\_\_ is a historic site in the central Ba Đình district, Hanoi.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of Liberty, a historical landmark, was given to the United States by France.
6. The local authority decided to put up a \_\_\_\_\_ to the brave soldiers who sacrificed for the country's independence.
7. Tourists can take the \_\_\_\_\_ to travel from the North to the South of Vietnam to enjoy the coutry's beautiful landscape.
8. With the increasing modernization, there are more and more \_\_\_\_\_ in the urban areas served as office buildings and accommodation.

**Exercise 4: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given.**

1. The government has announced plans to solve noise \_\_\_\_\_. POLLUTE
2. Plans to \_\_\_\_\_ the railway system is being carried out. MODERN
3. It's so \_\_\_\_\_ out here in my neighborhood. PEACE
4. What I don't like about living in the city is the \_\_\_\_\_ streets. CROWD
5. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ monument in this area to commemorate the national heroes. HISTORY
6. I can't put up with all the \_\_\_\_\_ from the construction site. NOISY
7. I really enjoy the \_\_\_\_\_ of my hometown. QUIET
8. My neighbors are \_\_\_\_\_ than I thought at first. FRIEND

**Exercise 5: Choose the correct answer.**

1. The yellow dress is \_\_\_\_\_ than the red one.  
A. beautiful                  B. as beautiful as                  C. beautiful as                  D. far more beautiful
2. My dog is \_\_\_\_\_ than yours.  
A. more big                  B. bigger                  C. as big                  D. much big
3. This test is one \_\_\_\_\_ in the whole semester.  
A. difficult                  B. more difficult                  C. the most difficult                  D. as much difficult
4. His stomachache was bad yesterday. Today it has become even \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. worse                  B. bad                  C. worst                  D. as bad
5. Yesterday I was really sick, but today I feel \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good                  B. best                  C. better                  D. as good
6. His speech is getting \_\_\_\_\_ as he keeps speaking.  
A. more and more                  B. more and more complicated  
C. best and best                  D. good and good
7. The teacher is \_\_\_\_\_ today than she was yesterday.  
A. more happy                  B. happy                  C. happiest                  D. much happier
8. It is \_\_\_\_\_ than I thought it is.  
A. not as big as                  B. as big as                  C. no bigger                  D. more bigger
9. The eagle is \_\_\_\_\_ than the pigeon.  
A. small                  B. smaller                  C. more little                  D. littler
10. My kitchen is \_\_\_\_\_ than yours.  
A. cleaner                  B. more clean                  C. most clean                  D. as clean
11. Your English is \_\_\_\_\_ mine.

A. not good as      B. not as good as      C. better      D. better as

12. She is \_\_\_\_\_ student in my class.

A. the smartest      B. smartest      C. the smarter      D. smarter

13. Peter does not speak English \_\_\_\_\_ than I do.

A. any better      B. gooder      C. good      D. better as

14. She is \_\_\_\_\_ prettier than me.

A. no any      B. none      C. not      D. any

15. \_\_\_\_\_ you practice, \_\_\_\_\_ you can speak English.

A. the more – more      B. the more - the better

C. more - more      D. the more - better

**Exercise 6: Identify the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Mary looks pretty in the blue dress than in the green one.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ Of the two students, Peter appears to be the most hardworking.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ The more attention you pay to the lesson, the best you can learn.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ This area of the city is farther more convenient than the others.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ Donkeys run slower than horses.

**Exercise 7: Choose the best answer to complete the following passage.**

### The Railway System

The railway system (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in England in the 1820s and became one of the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ successful methods of transportation. The railway was practical and connected (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of Europe for transport of people and products for over 100 years. They replaced the wagons drawn (4) \_\_\_\_\_ horses, and as time passed, the companies and inventors responsible for the railways improved the trains and the (5) \_\_\_\_\_. For the growing United States, the railways presented the only option to connect the already established Eastern coast with the settler and budding towns in the Midwest and West.

(Source: <https://www.historyforkids.net/>)

1. A. began	B. begin	C. beguns	D. beginning
2. A. more	B. most	C. least	D. so
3. A. much	B. few	C. little	D. some
4. A. for	B. by	C. of	D. on
5. A. tracks	B. roads	C. paths	D. ways

**Exercise 8: Read the passage and answer the following questions.**

**Statue of Liberty**

*By Peter Winkler*

On July 4, 1884 France presented the United States with an incredible birthday gift: The Statue of Liberty! Without its pedestal it's as tall as a 15-story building. She represents the United States. But the world-famous Statue of Liberty standing in New York Harbor was built in France. The statue was presented to the U.S., taken apart, shipped across the Atlantic Ocean in crates, and rebuilt in the U.S. It was France's gift to the American people.

It all started at dinner one night near Paris in 1865. A group of Frenchmen were discussing their dictator-like emperor and the democratic government of the U.S. They decided to build a monument to American freedom - and perhaps even strengthen French demands for democracy in their own country. At that dinner was the sculptor Frederic-Auguste Bartholdi. He imagined a statue of a woman holding a torch burning with the light of freedom.

Turning Bartholdi's idea into reality took 21 years. French supporters raised money to build the statue, and Americans paid for the pedestal it would stand on. Finally, in 1886, the statue was dedicated.

(Source: <https://kids.nationalgeographic.com/>)

1. When was the Statue of Liberty given to the US?

---

2. What is the height of the Statue of Liberty?

---

3. How was the Statue of Liberty transported to the US?

---

4. Who came up with the idea for the Statue of Liberty?

---

5. How long did it take to complete the Statue of Liberty?

---

**Exercise 9: Rewrite the sentence using comparatives.**

1. No one in my class is taller than Hang.

→ Hang \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Nothing in the shop is cheaper than this headphone.

→ This headphone \_\_\_\_\_.

3. No one can swim faster than he does.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ swimmer.

4. I like chocolate ice cream best.

→ I don't \_\_\_\_\_.

5. No one in his family can read faster than Peter.

→ Peter reads in his family \_\_\_\_\_.

# UNIT 5: NATURAL WONDERS OF VIET NAM

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

Nature Wonders		Travel	
<b>Wonderful</b> - scenic - amazing - diverse - incredible - unforgettable - spectacular - picturesque	<b>Nature</b> - island - waterfall - cave - mountain - desert - rainforest - coast	<b>Activities</b> - exploration - expedition - experience	<b>Travel gears</b> - plaster - sleeping bag - compass - backpack - suncream
			

### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Ôn tập cách phát âm đuôi -s/-es và đuôi -ed

##### a. Phát âm: /iz/, /s/, vs. /z/ (Cách phát âm đuôi -s / -es)

Có 3 cách phát âm đuôi -s/-es, phụ thuộc vào âm tận cùng của từ như sau:

/s/						
Các âm tận cùng					Ví dụ	
/t/	/k/	/f/	/p/	/θ/	• wants • attacks • stops • baths • laughs	
t, k, f, gh, p, th						
/iz/						
Các âm tận cùng					Ví dụ	
/s/	/z/	/ʃ/	/tʃ/	/dʒ/	/ʒ/	• dances • watches

ce, ss, x, se, sh, ch, ge	
/z/	
Các âm còn lại	Ví dụ
	• plays • allows • features

## b. Phát âm: /id/, /t/, vs. /d/ (Cách phát âm đuôi -ed)

Có 3 cách phát âm đuôi -ed, phụ thuộc vào âm tận cùng của từ như sau:

/id/						
Các âm tận cùng						Ví dụ
/t/ và /d/						• needed • wanted • decided
t, d						
/t/						
Các âm tận cùng						Ví dụ
/s/	/ʃ/	/tʃ/	/k/	/p/	/f/	• danced • kissed • fixed • washed • watched • marked • helped  • coughed • sniffed
ce, ss, x, sh, ch, k, p, f, gh						
/z/						
Các âm còn lại						Ví dụ
						• played • allowed • travelled

## 2. Trọng âm của từ với đuôi -al, -ial, -ual

Trọng âm của từ thường rơi vào âm tiết đứng trước hậu tố -al, -ial, -ual.

normal	/ˈnɔːml/	colossal	/kəˈlɒsl/
essential	/ɪˈsenʃl/	industrial	/ɪnˈdʌstriəl/
individual	/ˌɪndɪˈvɪdʒuəl/	casual	/ˈkæʒuəl/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Cấu trúc so sánh nhất (Superlatives)

- So sánh nhất được sử dụng để so sánh người (hoặc vật) với tất cả người (hoặc vật) trong nhóm.
- Trong câu so sánh nhất, tính từ sẽ được chia làm hai loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn, trong đó:
  - Tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết. Ví dụ: tall, high, big,...
  - Tính từ dài là những tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên. Ví dụ: expensive, intelligent,...

### Cấu trúc câu so sánh nhất đối với tính từ ngắn

<b>Cấu trúc</b>	S + V + the + adj + -est + (danh từ).
<b>Ví dụ</b>	Russia is <b>the biggest country</b> in the world. Quang is <b>the tallest</b> in his class.

#### Cấu trúc câu so sánh nhất đối với tính từ dài

<b>Cấu trúc</b>	S + V + the + most + adj + (danh từ).
<b>Ví dụ</b>	My mom must be <b>the most patient person</b> I've ever met. This is <b>the most spectacular scene</b> I've ever seen.

#### • Cách thêm đuôi -est vào tính từ ngắn

Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 phụ âm, thêm đuôi -est	old – oldest tall - tallest
Tính từ kết thúc bởi nguyên âm -e, chỉ cần thêm đuôi -st	nice – nicest cute - cutest
Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i) + 1 phụ âm, gấp đôi phụ âm cuối và thêm đuôi -est	big - biggest fat - fattest
Tính từ kết thúc bởi -y, dù có 2 âm tiết vẫn là tính từ ngắn, bỏ -y và thêm đuôi -iest	-happy - happiest early - earliest
<b>Lưu ý:</b> Một số tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng có tận cùng là -y, -le, -ow, -er thì áp dụng quy tắc thêm đuôi -est của tính từ ngắn.	simple – simplest narrow – narrowest clever - cleverest

#### • Một vài tính từ bất quy tắc

Với một số tính từ sau, dạng so sánh nhất của chúng khác với các tính từ khác.

Tính từ	Dạng so sánh nhất
good	the best
bad	the worst
far	the farthest/furthest
much/ many	the most
little	the least
old	the oldest/ eldest

#### • Superlatives with S + have/has + P<sub>II</sub>

Sau nội dung mang tính so sánh hơn nhất, cấu trúc *(that) S + have/has + (ever) + P<sub>II</sub>* thường được sử dụng.

*What's the most important decision (that) you have ever made?*

*That was the best holiday (that) I have had for a long time.*

## 2. Modal verbs

Các động từ khuyết thiếu có thể được sử dụng để mô tả khả năng thực hiện hành động của một đối tượng, hoặc khả năng xảy ra của một tình huống với những mức độ chắc chắn khác nhau. Ngoài ra, động từ khuyết thiếu cũng có thể được sử dụng để đưa ra các dự đoán hoặc đề nghị của người nói dựa vào gợi ý có sẵn.

Modals	used to describe possibility (mô tả khả năng)	used to guess or give suggestion (đưa ra suy đoán)
may (more formal)	I haven't decided where to go on holiday. I <b>may go</b> to London.	Mark is absent from today class. He <b>may be</b> ill.
might (less formal)	Take an umbrella with you. It <b>might rain</b> later.	She is not answering her phone. She <b>might be sleeping</b> .
can	I <b>can come and see</b> you tomorrow if you like.	They haven't lived here for very long. They <b>can't know</b> many people.
must	You <b>must keep</b> it a secret. You <b>mustn't tell</b> anyone.	Louise <b>must get</b> very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.
needn't	<i>You needn't do something = it's not necessary to do it.</i> <b>We</b> have plenty of time. We <b>needn't hurry</b> .	X

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

Exercise 1: Match the word in column A with its antonym in column B.

Column A		Column B
1. valley	_____	a. a small light that is held in the hand and usually gets its power from batteries
2. cave	_____	b. a large hole in the side of a hill, cliff, or mountain, or one that is underground

3. island	_____	c. a drug that is used to reduce or remove physical pain
4. waterfall	_____	d. a piece of land completely surrounded by water
5. painkillers	_____	e. an area, often covered with sand or rocks, where there is very little rain and not many plants
6. plaster	_____	f. a small piece of sticky cloth or plastic that you use to cover and protect a cut in the skin
7. torch	_____	g. an area of low land between hills or mountains, often with a river running through it
8. desert	_____	h. water, especially from a river or stream, dropping from a higher to a lower point, sometimes from a great height

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given in each bracket.**

1. A powerful earthquake struck a rural, \_\_\_\_\_ region of eastern Afghanistan. MOUNTAIN
2. I travel to \_\_\_\_\_ new places and cultures. EXPLORATION
3. Once a volcano \_\_\_\_\_, it may damage many buildings and kill many lives. ERUPTION
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ town of Mystic is among the most exciting culinary destinations on US East Coast. PICTURE
5. Serious pollution and environmental incidents have been reported in some \_\_\_\_\_ areas. COAST
6. More efforts must be devoted to the preservation of the biological \_\_\_\_\_ of the rainforests. DIVERSE
7. The travel agent promised to give me an \_\_\_\_\_ experience. FORGET
8. The government wanted to attract tourists to its \_\_\_\_\_ places with an aim to spur the economic growth. SCENERY
9. It's no secret that Kent is absolutely full of \_\_\_\_\_ places to live. CREDIBLE
10. What makes a \_\_\_\_\_ trip for me is scenic oceanfront view and delicious food. WONDER

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. A. freez <u>e</u> s	B. boat <u>s</u>	C. siz <u>e</u> s	D. villag <u>e</u> s
2. A. lov <u>e</u> s	B. jok <u>e</u> s	C. grap <u>e</u> s	D. cliff <u>s</u>
3. A. prom <u>i</u> sed	B. compl <u>a</u> ined	C. call <u>e</u> d	D. repl <u>i</u> ed
4. A. bird <u>s</u>	B. leg <u>s</u>	C. men <u>u</u> s	D. cag <u>e</u> s

5. A. brushes <u>s</u>	B. catches <u>s</u>	C. breathes <u>s</u>	D. addresses <u>s</u>
6. A. paths <u>s</u>	B. stops <u>s</u>	C. boats <u>s</u>	D. things <u>s</u>
7. A. added <u>d</u>	B. demanded <u>d</u>	C. admitted <u>d</u>	D. replied <u>d</u>
8. A. baths <u>s</u>	B. bananas <u>s</u>	C. coughs <u>s</u>	D. cliffs <u>s</u>
9. A. insisted <u>d</u>	B. whispered <u>d</u>	C. called <u>d</u>	D. explained <u>d</u>
10. A. attacks <u>s</u>	B. calls <u>s</u>	C. whispers <u>s</u>	D. offers <u>s</u>
11. A. watched <u>d</u>	B. installed <u>d</u>	C. described <u>d</u>	D. covered <u>d</u>
12. A. decorated <u>d</u>	B. warned <u>d</u>	C. wanted <u>d</u>	D. waited <u>d</u>
13. A. lives <u>s</u>	B. labs <u>s</u>	C. dances <u>s</u>	D. tables <u>s</u>
14. A. pleased <u>d</u>	B. erased <u>d</u>	C. objected <u>d</u>	D. increased <u>d</u>
15. A. deserts <u>s</u>	B. values <u>s</u>	C. phones <u>s</u>	D. pens <u>s</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. trial	B. natural	C. arrival	D. physical
2. A. refusal	B. professional	C. occasional	D. agricultural
3. A. usual	B. racial	C. annual	D. celestial
4. A. financial	B. commercial	C. intellectual	D. essential
5. A. dismissal	B. individual	C. official	D. eventual
6. A. survival	B. principal	C. local	D. general
7. A. national	B. political	C. personal	D. central
8. A. virtual	B. sensual	C. material	D. crucial
9. A. initial	B. special	C. partial	D. social
10. A. gradual	B. unequal	C. industrial	D. traditional
11. A. dial	B. total	C. annual	D. unusual
12. A. emotional	B. conventional	C. memorial	D. factual
13. A. bilingual	B. admirable	C. mutual	D. spiritual
14. A. racial	B. denial	C. facial	D. visual
15. A. clinical	B. classical	C. chemical	D. bicarbonate

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Complete the sentence using the superlative form of the given adjective.**

1. Who is the (famous) \_\_\_\_\_ actor in your country?

2. Daniel is the (happy) \_\_\_\_\_ person that we know.
3. November is the (cold) \_\_\_\_\_ month of the year in Viet Nam.
4. I think my dad is the (good) \_\_\_\_\_ cook in the world.
5. What is the (fast) \_\_\_\_\_ animal in the world?
6. Who is the (tall) \_\_\_\_\_ person in your class?
7. Sarah bought the (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_ cake in the bakery.
8. This is the (big) \_\_\_\_\_ cake in the world.
9. What is the (dangerous) \_\_\_\_\_ animal in the world?
10. Where is the (nice) \_\_\_\_\_ beach in your country?

**Exercise 2: Complete the sentences using superlatives.**

1. Which is (easy) \_\_\_\_\_ language to learn?
2. This is (short) \_\_\_\_\_ road in Ha Noi.
3. I think that one over there is (strong) \_\_\_\_\_ buffalo.
4. Jimmy is (smart) \_\_\_\_\_ student in my class.
5. This book is (scary) \_\_\_\_\_ one that I have ever known.
6. This skirt was (cheap) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Everest is (high) \_\_\_\_\_ mountain in the world.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (interesting) book ever in my opinion is *Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire*.
9. Peter's room is (clean) \_\_\_\_\_ of all.
10. That was (stupid) \_\_\_\_\_ mistake ever.
11. Who is (old) \_\_\_\_\_ person in your family?
12. China is (big) \_\_\_\_\_ country in the world.
13. For many years, Michael Jackson was (popular) \_\_\_\_\_ artist.
14. She is (fast) \_\_\_\_\_ swimmer in the competition. She won 2 gold medals.
15. I think Cambridge is (historical) \_\_\_\_\_ city in the world.

**Exercise 3: Complete the sentence using superlatives and the structure "S + have/has + ever + P<sub>II</sub>"**

1. She is (beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_ person that I (see) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. This is (boring) \_\_\_\_\_ film that we (watch) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Sarah is (lazy) \_\_\_\_\_ person that I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Han is (kind) \_\_\_\_\_ girl that I (know) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. This is (interesting) \_\_\_\_\_ film that Sarah (watch) \_\_\_\_\_.

6. This is (challenging) \_\_\_\_\_ competition that I (join) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. That was (crowded) \_\_\_\_\_ exhibition that we (attend) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. This is (delicious) \_\_\_\_\_ cake that I (taste) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Anna is (generous) \_\_\_\_\_ friend that we (have) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. That was (good) \_\_\_\_\_ birthday that he (have) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 4: What do you say in these situations? Use a superlative + ever.**

1. You've just read a book. The book was extremely boring. You tell your friend:  
(boring/book/ever/read) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Someone has just told you a joke which you think is very offensive. You say:  
(offensive/joke/ever/hear) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You're drinking latte with a friend. It's really good latte. You say:  
(good/latte/ever/taste) This \_\_\_\_\_.
4. You have just run ten kilometres. You've never run further than this. You say:  
(far/ever/run) That \_\_\_\_\_.
5. You dropped out of college. Now you think this was a very bad mistake. You say:  
(bad/mistake/ever/make) It \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Your friend meets a lot of people, some of them famous. You ask your friend:  
(famous/person/ever/meet?) Who \_\_\_\_\_?
7. They have travelled many places. You ask them:  
(beautiful/place/travel?) What \_\_\_\_\_?
8. You have listened to many albums. You like *New Kids: Return* the best. You say:  
(have/good/songs/listen to) That \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Your friend goes shopping a lot. You ask her:  
(valuable/item/purchase?) What \_\_\_\_\_?
10. You have had so many beautiful moments in life. You cannot decide which one you like best. You say:  
(beautiful/moment/experience) It's difficult \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 5: Choose the suitable modal verb to fill in the blank.**

1. You *must / can / need* listen to the teacher.
2. People *must / must not / would not* waste food.
3. You *need/can't /have to* do more exercises in order to be healthier.

4. You *needn't /shall not /must not* drink alcohol. It is harmful to your health.
5. *Shall / Can/ Must* you play the piano, John?
6. Look at the sign! You *can't / wouldn't /shall not* park here.
7. *May / Must / Might* I go to the bathroom, Professor?
8. It *can / shall / may* snow tomorrow.
9. *Could/ Would/Must* you like to go by train?
10. *Should/Must /Might* I go and buy some food? Give me some advice!

**Exercise 6: Fill in the blank with *must/mustn't/don't have to/doesn't have to*.**

1. Hang \_\_\_\_\_ be the one who talks to our teacher. She is the most confident person.
2. We have a lot of important meetings tomorrow, so you \_\_\_\_\_ be late.
3. The exhibition is free. You \_\_\_\_\_ pay to get in.
4. My mom is a housewife. She \_\_\_\_\_ go to work.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ smoke inside the school.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ listen to me. I am telling the truth.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ clean my room today because it is still clean.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ be on time for the exam tomorrow. It is the most important one in the whole semester.
9. It's Sunday, so I \_\_\_\_\_ to wake up early.
10. We \_\_\_\_\_ forget to lock the doors before we leave.

**Exercise 7: Decide whether each pair of sentences have a similar meaning, or whether they are different. Write S for same or D for different.**

1. You'd better go to bed earlier.	You should go to bed earlier.	_____
2. You should have a rest.	You ought to have a rest.	_____
3. Students don't have to go to school on Sunday.	Students mustn't go to school on Sunday.	_____
4. You must be crazy to be driving this fast.	You should be crazy to be driving this fast.	_____
5. Candidates must be here before 8.	Candidates have to be here before 8.	_____
6. You can't park here.	You needn't park here.	_____
7. They have to study harder to get good marks.	They must work harder to get good marks.	_____

8. It must be my best friend ringing the doorbell.	It has to be my best friend ringing the doorbell.	_____
9. You can't be sleepy. You woke up at 10 this morning.	You aren't able to be sleepy. You woke up at 10 this morning.	_____
10. You needn't finish the assignment until next week.	You don't need to finish the assignment until next week.	_____

**Exercise 8: Rewrite each sentence so that it has a similar meaning and contains the word in capital.**

1. It would be a good idea for you to see a debt counsellor. OUGHT

→ \_\_\_\_\_

2. It's not necessary for them to arrive before 8.30. HAVE

→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. I'm sure that isn't Mark who is talking to Jane as he's in London. BE

→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. Jane is not answering her phone. Perhaps she is having a meeting. MAY

→ \_\_\_\_\_

5. You ought to bring an umbrella today in case it rains. HAD

→ \_\_\_\_\_

6. It's possible that Mark will be absent from today's class. MAY

→ \_\_\_\_\_

7. Passengers are not allowed to bring pets on the plane. MUST

→ \_\_\_\_\_

8. It's not necessary for you to buy more milk. NEEDN'T

→ \_\_\_\_\_

9. It's against the law to run a red light or exceed the speed limit. MUSTN'T

→ \_\_\_\_\_

10. It's impossible for that to be Johnny. He's abroad. CAN'T

→ \_\_\_\_\_

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. added <u>ed</u>	B. hooked <u>ed</u>	C. visited <u>ed</u>	D. subtracted <u>ed</u>
-----------------------	---------------------	----------------------	-------------------------

2. A. <u>question</u>	B. <u>tradition</u>	C. <u>generation</u>	D. <u>nation</u>
3. A. <u>jumped</u>	B. <u>increased</u>	C. <u>enjoyed</u>	D. <u>missed</u>
4. A. <u>experiences</u>	B. <u>oranges</u>	C. <u>arranges</u>	D. <u>chores</u>
5. A. <u>game</u>	B. <u>set</u>	C. <u>any</u>	D. <u>ten</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. difficult	B. specific	C. material	D. detective
2. A. average	B. energy	C. furniture	D. librarian
3. A. essential	B. promotion	C. deliver	D. company
4. A. official	B. assistant	C. recommend	D. informal
5. A. evaluate	B. explanation	C. creative	D. industrial

**Exercise 3: Complete the sentence with the comparative or superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.**

1. What is (dry) \_\_\_\_\_ season of the year?
2. Who is (famous) \_\_\_\_\_ person in your country?
3. Do you think the films are (good) \_\_\_\_\_ than the books?
4. Hang is (nice) \_\_\_\_\_ person that I know.
5. 'Harry Potter' is probably (amazing) \_\_\_\_\_ film I have ever seen!
6. My friend thinks she's (smart) \_\_\_\_\_ than me, but I do not agree.
7. Is your teacher (young) \_\_\_\_\_ than your mom?
8. I think the A pool is (clean) \_\_\_\_\_ than the B pool.
9. This is (boring) \_\_\_\_\_ cartoon I've ever watched!
10. Is Anna (pretty) \_\_\_\_\_ person in your class?

**Exercise 4: Complete the sentence using comparatives or superlatives.**

1. June is (hot) \_\_\_\_\_ January.
2. Computers are (expensive) \_\_\_\_\_ mobile phones.
3. Anna is (noisy) \_\_\_\_\_ person in the family.
4. This is (large) \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant in our neighbourhood.
5. A tiger is (dangerous) \_\_\_\_\_ a rabbit.
6. We are (safe) \_\_\_\_\_ here than there.
7. In my classroom there are (many) \_\_\_\_\_ boys than girls.

8. Anna is (talented) \_\_\_\_\_ John.
9. I am (young) \_\_\_\_\_ child in my family.
10. This is (exciting) \_\_\_\_\_ film that I have ever watched.
11. In my opinion, elephants are (heavy) \_\_\_\_\_ animal on Earth.
12. That computer is (cheap) \_\_\_\_\_ of all.
13. Which is (easy) \_\_\_\_\_ subject at school?
14. Taylor is (pretty) \_\_\_\_\_ Jones.
15. Planes are (fast) \_\_\_\_\_ trains.

**Exercise 5: Use the modal verbs in the box below to complete the sentence. Each word can only be used once only.**

<i>may</i>	<i>might</i>	<i>can</i>	<i>can't</i>	<i>must</i>	<i>mustn't</i>
<i>could</i>	<i>should</i>	<i>shouldn't</i>	<i>have to</i>	<i>don't have to</i>	<i>doesn't have to</i>

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano very well.
2. I really \_\_\_\_\_ buy a new phone. Mine is broken.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ buy that book. You can borrow it from the library.
4. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ finish all the work today. She can save some for tomorrow.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ pass the exam if you did more Math exercises.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ make so much noise. Everyone is trying to concentrate.
7. If you are under 18, you \_\_\_\_\_ smoke.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ watch the reality show tonight. I haven't decided yet.
9. It \_\_\_\_\_ be Ann who will win the contest. She is by far the most talented contestant.
10. It \_\_\_\_\_ be Jane downstairs. She is at work.
11. When Peter was five, he \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano very well but he has forgotten how to play it now.
12. You \_\_\_\_\_ read this book. It's not so bad.

**Exercise 6: Choose the suitable modal verb.**

1. We've got plenty of time. You *don't have to/ need to/ have to* hurry.
2. My dad has been working the whole day. He *should be/ must be/ need to be* tired.
3. I've understood already. You *need to/ don't have to/ have to* explain it one more time.
4. My grandfather *can/ could/ shall* speak three languages when he was young.
5. We *needn't have/ may not have/ shall not* brought an umbrella with us. The weather has been so clear.

6. She *must/ must have/need have* gone outside. She was just here a few minutes ago.
7. It *can't be/ can be/ mustn't be* difficult to find a restaurant near here. This is a food street.
8. I *may/ might have to/ might go* to the hospital the other day. My illness is getting more and more serious.
9. You *shall not/ may not/ mustn't* tell anyone our secret. It's just for the two of us.
10. Joe *can/may/could* swim very well. He is our school's swimming champion.
11. I am sad, so I *can/ may/ must* stay at home tonight.
12. *Could/Shall/ Must* you please phone me in the evening?
13. To get a driving license, you *must/may/should be* over 18 years old.
14. You *must /may /can* wear a uniform when you go to school.
15. During take-off, all passengers *should/ must/ can* remain in their seats for safety reasons.
16. You *mustn't/ may not/shall not* use your phone on the plane.
17. *may/shall/must* go out with my friends tonight, but I haven't made my decision.
18. You *don't have to/ should/ can* come with me if you do not want to.
19. You *should/ would/ may* go out more and make new friends.
20. She *mustn't/ can't/shall not* come with us tonight because she is sick.

**Exercise 7: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given to complete the following text.**

Japan has many amazing man-made structures that have a rich (1. HISTORIC) \_\_\_\_\_ behind it. Japan also holds some (2. CREDIBLE) \_\_\_\_\_ structures and places that aren't the result of a person's hand but simply the result of nature. Although many of these places have been altered slightly by human hands to make it (3. ACCESS) \_\_\_\_\_ to visitors, the elements of nature can still be observed, and are a (4. SPECTACLE) \_\_\_\_\_ sight to behold!

Of course, we have to start off the list with one of the most (5. FAME) \_\_\_\_\_ and popular sights in Japan. Mt. Fuji is an (6. ACTIVITY) \_\_\_\_\_ volcano located on the border of Yamanashi and Shizuoka prefecture on Honshu Island. This is a must visit for those in Japan who enjoy (7. LOOK) \_\_\_\_\_ at natural wonders.

Akiyoshi Cave is Japan's largest limestone cave and is a popular place to visit. Visitors are greeted by a (8. BEAUTY) \_\_\_\_\_ water at the entrance before they enter the cave.

In Beppu, Oita in Japan, there (9. BE) \_\_\_\_\_ a series of hot springs scattered around that are naturally occurring. The number of hot spring vents with steam rising are (10. FASCINATE) \_\_\_\_\_ to watch. Although some of the hot springs have been altered by man, the water

comes from natural hot springs within the land. Visitors can also enjoy some of the hot springs by (11. GO) \_\_\_\_\_ for a dip. You can even enjoy an (12. FORGET) \_\_\_\_\_ experience with a hot sand bath!

Japan is filled with beauty no matter where you go. Okinawa and Hokkaido aren't part of the main island of Japan, and they each have some (13. PICTURE) \_\_\_\_\_ sights specific to the type of environment that it is. There (14. BE) \_\_\_\_\_ also many other beautiful wonders to (15. EXPLORATION) \_\_\_\_\_ on the main island as well.

**Exercise 8: Rewrite the following sentences using a modal. The underlined words can be written as S + modal + V (or modal + S + V in questions).**

0. It is advisable that you proofread your essay before submitting.

→ *You should proofread your essay before submitting.*

1. I promise to go shopping with you next week.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

2. It's essential that we leave at 8.30 to board the flight at 10 o'clock.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. Are you able to help me with my homework tomorrow?

→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. It's not a good idea for children to go swimming alone.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

5. It's possible that the flight will be delayed.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

6. Why don't we go and see a film tonight?

→ \_\_\_\_\_

7. Is it possible for me to sit here?

→ \_\_\_\_\_

8. It's not necessary for you to apologise for something you did not do.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

9. I want to help you with your assignment but I'm not able to.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

10. Mark is at home but he's answering the phone. I'm sure that he's asleep.

→ \_\_\_\_\_



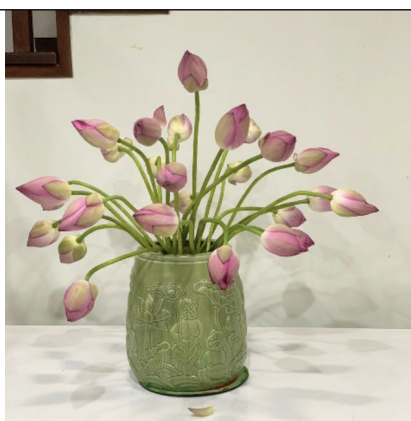
# UNIT 6: OUR TET HOLIDAY

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng



peach blossom



lotus



dried candied fruit



New Year couples



lucky money

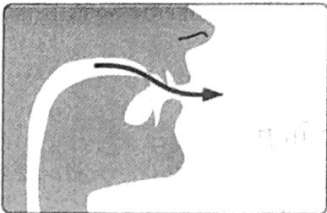
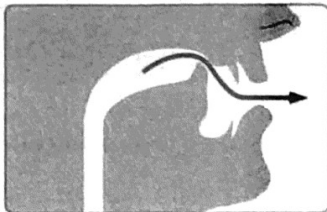
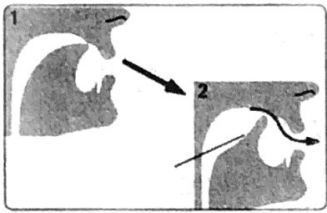


apricot blossom

Tet Holiday	
<b>Before Tet</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- prepare</li> <li>- clean house</li> <li>- decorate</li> <li>- make <i>banh chung</i></li> </ul>	<b>During Tet</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- watch fireworks</li> <li>- gather</li> <li>- go to pagodas</li> <li>- make New Year resolutions</li> <li>- reunite/ gather</li> <li>- visit relatives</li> </ul>

## II. Ngữ âm

### 1. Phát âm: /s/ vs. /ʃ/ vs. /tʃ/

Âm	Khẩu hình miệng	Cách phát âm
/s/		Đặt nhẹ đầu lưỡi lên hàm trên, để luồng khí thoát ra giữa lưỡi và lợi, thanh quản không rung, để mặt lưỡi chạm nhẹ lên lợi hàm trên.
/ʃ/		Đầu lưỡi hướng lên trên vòm họng, nâng phần trước của lưỡi lên và không rung thanh quản.
/tʃ/		Môi hơi tròn và chu về phía trước, khi luồng khí phát ra, môi tròn nửa, lưỡi thẳng và chạm vào hàm dưới, để khí thoát ra trên bề mặt lưỡi. Không rung thanh quản.

• Âm /s/ có thể được nhận diện bằng chữ cái *s*, *ss*, hoặc *c*, và đôi khi là *sc*.

s	sister	bus		
ss	class	glasses		
c	city	circle	pencil	place
sc	science	scissors		

• Âm /ʃ/ có thể được nhận diện bằng chữ cái *sh*.

shop	fashion	cash	fresh	wash	mushroom
------	---------	------	-------	------	----------

Âm /tʃ/ có thể được nhận diện bằng chữ cái *ch*, *t* hoặc *tch*.

ch	chip	choose	March	which
----	------	--------	-------	-------

<b>t</b>	future	question		
<b>tch</b>	catch	watch	kitchen	

## 2. Trọng âm của từ với đuôi -uous, -ious, -eous

Trọng âm của từ thường rơi vào âm tiết đứng trước hậu tố -uous, -ious, -eous.

precious	/'preʃəs/	anxious	/'æŋkjəs/
victorious	/vɪk'tɔ:riəs/	spacious	/'speɪʃəs/
notorious	/nəʊ'tɔ:riəs/	spontaneous	/spɒn'teɪniəs/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Các cách để đưa ra lời khuyên

	should		bare infinitive
S	had better	(not)	
	ought		to V

*People should go to bed early and eat a lot of vegetables to stay healthy.*

*I have to meet Amy in ten minutes. I'd better go now, or I'll be late.*

*You don't look very well. You had better not go out tonight.*

*Do you think I ought to apply for this job?*

### 2. Tương lai đơn (Simple Future Tense)

#### a. Cách dùng

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Dùng để diễn tả một hành động hay sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai	- She'll be back at 6 p.m. tonight. - They'll help me do this exercise.
Dùng để diễn tả một suy nghĩ, quyết định ngay lúc nói	- I will drink water instead of milk. - I think I will teach here.
Dùng để diễn tả một lời hứa	- I promise I'll come tomorrow. - He promises he will marry me.
Dùng để diễn tả một lời đề nghị, gợi ý	- Will we go for a walk tonight? - What we do now?

#### b. Cấu trúc

Thể khẳng định	S + will + V <sub>nguyên mẫu</sub> (+ o).
Thể phủ định	S + will not + V <sub>nguyên mẫu</sub> (+ O).
Thể nghi vấn	Will + S + V <sub>nguyên mẫu</sub> (+ O)?

	<p>➔ Yes, S + will.</p> <p>➔ No, S + won't.</p>
Ví dụ	<p><i>They'll come to the party next Sunday.</i></p> <p><i>They won't come to the party next Sunday.</i></p> <p><i>Will they come to the party next Sunday?</i></p>

### c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

- Trong câu tương lai thường xuất hiện các từ chỉ thời gian như: *tomorrow, next day/week/month/year, someday, soon...*

- Ngoài ra các từ và cụm từ như: *I think/promise, perhaps = probably....* cũng được dùng trong tương lai đơn.

*I don't think the exam will be very difficult.*

### 3. Các cách để nói về dự định tương lai

Khi muốn nói về dự định trong tương lai gần, ngoài thì động từ *tương lai đơn*, chúng ta có thể sử dụng *hiện tại đơn, hiện tại tiếp diễn*, hoặc cấu trúc *be going to* tùy vào mức độ chắc chắn của hành động.

• **Hiện tại đơn** dùng để thời gian biểu của tàu xe, rạp phim, chương trình TV, ... (cố định, ảnh hưởng tới nhiều người, không thể tùy ý thay đổi).

*What time does the train arrive? - The film starts at 8.15.*

• **Hiện tại tiếp diễn** dùng để nói về lịch trình đã lên kế hoạch của cá nhân chắc chắn (> 90%) là sẽ xảy ra.

*What time are you arriving? - I'm going to the cinema this evening.*

• Cấu trúc **be going to** dùng để nói về lịch trình đã lên kế hoạch của cá nhân gần như chắc chắn (~ 70%-80%) là sẽ xảy ra, hoặc dự đoán về việc có thể xảy ra dựa vào tình huống hiện tại.

*Look at those black clouds. I think it is going to rain.*

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Write the appropriate phrases describing the activity in each picture.**



**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with given words or phrases.**

<i>fireworks</i>	<i>first footer</i>	<i>envelopes</i>	<i>relatives</i>	<i>pagodas</i>
<i>behave</i>	<i>painting</i>	<i>decorative</i>	<i>celebrate</i>	<i>strikes</i>

- I think when midnight \_\_\_\_\_, people will want to be together with their beloved ones.
- It is a deep-rooted belief that the first person to enter a house at the beginning of a lunar year, or the \_\_\_\_\_, will have a bearing on the family's fortune throughout that year.
- Nowadays, people can purchase ready-made Chung cakes to enjoy and give to \_\_\_\_\_ and friends.
- Vietnamese, especially Buddhists, have a long tradition of visiting \_\_\_\_\_ and temples in the new year to pray for peace and luck during the year.
- Dong Ho \_\_\_\_\_ is a unique Vietnamese art that carries the nation's traditional values.
- Traditionally, lucky money is put in \_\_\_\_\_ which are red with gold calligraphy, as the colours signify good fortune.
- Lanterns are wonderful \_\_\_\_\_ items not only at Tet festival but also many other celebrations in Vietnam and Asian countries.
- People are allowed to use certain types of \_\_\_\_\_ for occasions like weddings, birthday parties and Lunar New Year celebrations, but safety must be ensured.
- Children sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ differently when their parents are not around.

10. Though Tet shares the same origins with the Chinese New Year, Vietnamese people \_\_\_\_\_ it with unique characteristics that distinguish Tet from other New Year festivals anywhere else.

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given at the end of the sentence.**

1. People usually have to prepare months before the actual \_\_\_\_\_ of the New Year Eve.  
CELEBRATE

2. Whether in ancient times or today, Tet is still the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ holiday in Vietnam.  
TRADITION

3. There are many contests for Vietnamese people to share \_\_\_\_\_ moments and cultural identities of localities during the Tet festival. MEMORY

4. It's important to understand culture from another country before you travel to avoid unacceptable \_\_\_\_\_. BEHAVE

5. Peach blossoms are an indispensable house \_\_\_\_\_ for Tet in northern Vietnam.  
DECORATE

6. Vietnamese believe the peach blossoms and kumquat trees will bring happiness and good \_\_\_\_\_ for a new year. FORTUNATELY

7. The red colour, which is also featured prominently in New Year decorations, symbolizes \_\_\_\_\_ and fortune. WEALTHY

8. The Tet holidays are days of relaxation, family reunion, \_\_\_\_\_ and joy. HAPPY

9. Children and adults, all alike, dress \_\_\_\_\_ to welcome a happy new year. BEAUTY

10. A cat's cry sounds like the Vietnamese word for \_\_\_\_\_, which is *nghèo*. POOR

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

lunch school mouse maps <u>ch</u> icken <u>ch</u> at <u>sh</u> oe <u>sh</u> oot teach <u>re</u> ach talk <u>s</u> <u>ch</u> arity <u>s</u> weet <u>s</u> inger <u>ch</u> ill <u>sh</u> ow <u>ch</u> ild <u>ch</u> ili <u>sh</u> ell <u>s</u> old <u>c</u> ereal exist <u>sh</u> opping <u>ch</u> alk <u>ch</u> ease <u>ch</u> ant <u>sh</u> eat <u>s</u> machine <u>s</u> uitable mis <u>ch</u> ievous expens <u>iv</u> e transport <u>s</u> ync harsh <u>dis</u> cover <u>sh</u> ore <u>s</u> uccess <u>s</u> end <u>s</u> uck <u>sh</u> ee <u>p</u>		
/s/	/ʃ/	/tʃ/

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. industrious	B. victorious	C. advantageous	D. courageous
2. A. nervous	B. dangerous	C. cautious	D. ambitious
3. A. envious	B. ridiculous	C. delirious	D. hilarious
4. A. furious	B. mysterious	C. anxious	D. studious
5. A. gorgeous	B. nauseous	C. tedious	D. victorious
6. A. previous	B. notorious	C. various	D. obvious
7. A. religious	B. tedious	C. serious	D. curious
8. A. precious	B. spacious	C. officious	D. gracious
9. A. delicious	B. factious	C. specious	D. dubious
10. A. tenuous	B. virtuous	C. fastuous	D. continuous
11. A. suspicious	B. generous	C. marvellous	D. odious
12. A. conscious	B. anxious	C. ferocious	D. glorious
13. A. jealous	B. enormous	C. famous	D. dangerous
14. A. harmonious	B. oblivious	C. continuous	D. tedious
15. A. gaseous	B. righteous	C. spontaneous	D. courteous

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Fill in the blank with the structure 'had better (not) + bare infinitive' using the verb in table.**

<i>not eat</i>	<i>not talk</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>clean</i>	<i>study</i>
<i>drive</i>	<i>drink</i>	<i>get</i>	<i>not work</i>	<i>stop</i>

- You \_\_\_\_\_ some more sleep. You look tired.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of candies. They are harmful to your health.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor's every month to check on your health.
- Peter \_\_\_\_\_ in class. The teacher is really angry at him.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ smoking. It's bad for you.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ so hard. He is overdoing everything.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ carefully at night.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ your teeth regularly.
- Anna \_\_\_\_\_ harder or she won't pass the test.
- Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ more water. She needs to be hydrated.

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the structure 'should/shouldn't + bare infinitive' using the verb in table.**

<i>not eat</i>	<i>not drink</i>	<i>study</i>	<i>say</i>	<i>not go</i>
<i>apply</i>	<i>not do</i>	<i>try</i>	<i>read</i>	<i>not go</i>

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ too much tea at night. It's hard for you to get to sleep.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ this book. It's incredible.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ to that restaurant. It has bad reviews.
4. Do you think I for this job?
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ more if you want to rank 1<sup>st</sup> in class.
6. This place is dangerous. We \_\_\_\_\_ there.
7. Children \_\_\_\_\_ sweets. It's bad for their teeth.
8. The new president \_\_\_\_\_ his best to help the citizens.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ thank you to your mother for taking care of you.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ that. It's rude.

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the structure 'ought (not) to + bare infinitive' using the verb in table.**

<i>not watch</i>	<i>call</i>	<i>drive</i>	<i>pay</i>	<i>wear</i>
<i>not watch</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>drink</i>	<i>work</i>	<i>arrive</i>

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ a jacket. It's freezing outside.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ TV before you finish cleaning your room.
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ harder to catch up with your friends.
4. Young children \_\_\_\_\_ horror movies.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ at least 2 litres of water every day.
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ slowly. Safety first!
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ your homework before you watch cartoons.
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ on time. This meeting is very important.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ a cab. It's raining heavily outside.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ your tuition today.

**Exercise 4: Choose the correct answer.**

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ take off my coat. It's so hot.  
A. should                      B. should to                      C. better                      D. ought
2. The airline only allows one piece of luggage. You \_\_\_\_\_ pack too much!  
A. had not better              B. better not                      C. had better not              D. better
3. It's raining outside. I \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella.

- A. had better to bring                                      B. had better not bring  
C. had better bring    D. had better bringing
4. I am struggling with this problem. What \_\_\_\_\_?
- A. should I do              B. I should do              C. had I better do              D. ought I do
5. I just came to this city. Where \_\_\_\_\_ if I want to go shopping?
- A. should go I              B. ought to I go              C. should I go              D. had I go
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ to your mother after class today. She needs to know your study results.
- A. ought talk              B. ought to talk              C. should to talk              D. had better to talk
7. My sister loves candies, but she \_\_\_\_\_ too much or she will get fat.
- A. shouldn't eat              B. should eat not              C. should eat              D. had better eat
8. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ your money if you want to travel around the world.
- A. ought to save              B. ought not to save              C. had to save              D. should to save
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ healthy food like fruits and vegetables.
- A. should to eat              B. should eat              C. had to eat              D. had better to eat
10. Fast food is harmful to your health. You \_\_\_\_\_ it regularly.
- A. had better not eat              B. had not better eat              C. should to not eat              D. ought not eat

**Exercise 5: Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.**

<i>better</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>hadn't</i>	<i>I'd</i>
<i>not</i>	<i>to</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>should</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>

- It might rain. We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella.
- Ben needs to know what happened. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ better tell him.
- We'd better \_\_\_\_\_ park the car here. The road is too narrow.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ brush your teeth at least twice a day.
- What are we going to do? It's time \_\_\_\_\_ decide.
- \_\_\_\_\_ better not be late. It's an important meeting.
- It's time they \_\_\_\_\_ here. They promised they wouldn't be late.
- The window is open. You'd \_\_\_\_\_ close it before you go out.
- We'd better leave as soon as possible, \_\_\_\_\_ we?
- The government should \_\_\_\_\_ something about the problem.
- It's time the government \_\_\_\_\_ something about the problem.
- It's time something \_\_\_\_\_ done about the problem.

**Exercise 6: Complete the sentence with the correct future form (will, be going to, present continuous).**

1. Tom's mother thinks that he (be) \_\_\_\_\_ famous.
2. I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to Venice on Tuesday. I'm so excited.
3. Look at those clouds! It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ soon.
4. I hope you (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ until midnight.
5. I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ my parents at the airport.
6. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday party tonight. Everything is ready.
7. I do not think it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Tim (come) \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday. I can't wait to see him.
9. Do you think this solution (help) \_\_\_\_\_ you?
10. Our family (move) \_\_\_\_\_ to a new house. We have already sold our old house.
11. Anna (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor tomorrow. She is having a stomach ache.
12. I (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ a week in German but we haven't booked a hotel yet.
13. I (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ to Madrid tonight.
14. Sarah thinks you (understand) \_\_\_\_\_ what she means soon.
15. Hey! I (bring) \_\_\_\_\_ you a cup of tea.

**Exercise 7: Change the verb in bracket to either the present simple or the future simple.**

1. I (text) \_\_\_\_\_ you as soon as I get on the bus.
2. Let's eat dinner when Anna (get) \_\_\_\_\_ here.
3. Sarah (be) \_\_\_\_\_ late this evening, so we don't have to hurry.
4. As soon as I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ able to, I'm going to buy a new car.
5. I'll call you when I (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport.
6. Please wait here until the staff (call) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
7. I (wake) \_\_\_\_\_ up early tomorrow and finish my homework.
8. Before you (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ the house, make sure you have locked all the doors.
9. I must clean my room before my mom (get) \_\_\_\_\_ here.
10. I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ you at the restaurant next week.
11. I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ until you finish your work.
12. What do you want to do after the class (finish) \_\_\_\_\_?
13. I (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ drinking beer!
14. She (send) \_\_\_\_\_ me a text message when she leaves the house today.

15. She (let) \_\_\_\_\_ us know when she is ready to go.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>ough</u>	B. <u>um</u>	C. <u>undo</u>	D. <u>union</u>
2. A. <u>noon</u>	B. <u>tool</u>	C. <u>blood</u>	D. <u>pool</u>
3. A. <u>worked</u>	B. <u>forced</u>	C. <u>talked</u>	D. <u>wanted</u>
4. A. <u>sun</u>	B. <u>sure</u>	C. <u>succeed</u>	D. <u>sort</u>
5. A. <u>genetics</u>	B. <u>good</u>	C. <u>giraffe</u>	D. <u>geography</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. specific	B. mechanic	C. amusing	D. dangerous
2. A. suspicious	B. position	C. athletic	D. enemy
3. A. national	B. international	C. recommend	D. understand
4. A. comfortable	B. popular	C. regional	D. important
5. A. pollution	B. construction	C. extinction	D. advantageous

**Exercise 3: Complete the sentence using the correct future form (will, be going to, present continuous).**

1. I think it (snow) \_\_\_\_\_ soon.
2. I'm sure you (not/fail) \_\_\_\_\_ the Math exam next week.
3. I hope the weather (be) \_\_\_\_\_ windy next week.
4. Be careful! You (break) \_\_\_\_\_ this glass.
5. Peter (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ his old teacher tomorrow.
6. My parents (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ their wedding anniversary in the countryside. They have already booked the hotel.
7. Ann (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the dentist on Saturday.
8. Look at the sky! It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Don't stay near the dog. It (bite) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
10. I (come) \_\_\_\_\_ to a party tonight.
11. Tom (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ to New Zealand next month.
12. My brother and I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ Colombia next month. We have booked a city tour there.

13. No need to hurry! I (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for you.
14. Hang promises that she (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the laundry.
15. My husband (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ some milk. We have almost run out of it.

**Exercise 4: Complete the sentence with either present simple or future simple.**

1. Her mother (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a teacher.
2. It seems like Anna and Peter (get) \_\_\_\_\_ married next month.
3. I always (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ a movie before going to bed.
4. We (have) \_\_\_\_\_ Art lesson once a week.
5. My bike is broken. I think I (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a new one.
6. The sky is grey. I think it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I think I (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a cake for my mom's birthday this Friday.
8. It often (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ in November here.
9. She (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of photos when she (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a new camera.
10. If it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_, I (open) \_\_\_\_\_ the umbrella.
11. He (phone) \_\_\_\_\_ you when he (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ his lunch.
12. We (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ until she (get) here.
13. I (lend) \_\_\_\_\_ him some money if he (ask) \_\_\_\_\_ me.
14. Sarah (love) \_\_\_\_\_ animals. She thinks she (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a vet when she grows up.
15. I think Tom (pass) \_\_\_\_\_ the exam next week.
16. If it (be) \_\_\_\_\_ snowing outside, I (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
17. Anne (play) \_\_\_\_\_ games every day.
18. I usually (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ tea in the morning.
19. Water (boil) \_\_\_\_\_ at 100 degrees Celsius.
20. I (call) \_\_\_\_\_ him until he (pick up) \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.

**Exercise 5: Choose the correct modal verb.**

1. You *should* / *would* / *ought* eat more fruits and vegetables.
2. You *should* / *better* / *ought* pay attention in class.
3. John has been working for more than 11 hours. He *must be* / *should be* / *need to be* so tired right now.
4. The teacher says we *can* / *must* / *should* read this book if we want to. It's optional.
5. The students *must* / *better* / *can* arrive on time for class.

6. I *should / would / ought* buy these trousers if I were you.
7. Take a hat with you. It *may / should / must* rain later.
8. People *must not / ought not / should not* to walk on the grass.
9. *May / Must / Should* I go to the bathroom, please?
10. You *ought to / can / would* study harder if you want to pass the exam.
11. *Can / Must / Should* you speak French?
12. Drivers *must / should / can* stop when the traffic lights are red.

**Exercise 6: Complete the following text using the words given.**

<i>gatherings</i>	<i>encouraging</i>	<i>disabilities</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>mountainous</i>
<i>happier</i>	<i>gifts</i>	<i>reunite</i>	<i>poor</i>	<i>celebrate</i>

Tet is the time for the Vietnamese people to temporarily set aside worries in life to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ with their families, friends, and relatives. Nothing is better than family (2) \_\_\_\_\_ during Tet festival but Tet is not simple like that. Tet is also an occasion for people to share with disadvantaged people in remote and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ areas, bringing a cozier and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ lunar New Year festival to them. Charity events are usually held across the country to bring a warm Lunar New Year holiday to ethnic minority people, disadvantaged workers, orphans and people with (5) \_\_\_\_\_. In addition to the gifts from the Buddhist Sangha, Thu Dau Mot city also donated 10kg of rice to every (6) \_\_\_\_\_ household. Huynh Van Thanh, Head of the municipal Committee for Mass Mobilization, said: "This practical activity has contributed to (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and supporting poor households, helping them have better conditions to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the traditional Tet festival. We (9) \_\_\_\_\_ calling for the cooperation of the whole society to have more (10) \_\_\_\_\_ for disadvantaged people on occasion of the upcoming Lunar New Year."

**Exercise 7: Read the passage and do the task that follows.**

### **New Year's Eve Celebrations around the World**

#### ***Spain***

Spanish people believe that eating twelve grapes, at midnight of the New Year, brings good luck. Thus, at every stroke of the clock, at midnight on New Year, they pop in a grape.

#### ***Rio de Janeiro, Brazil***

The Copacabana beach is famous for hosting the largest New Year celebrations worldwide! Millions of people from around the world come here to attend the huge party. Traditionally, the local Rio public

honors the beach by throwing white flowers into the sea. People also dress up in white as a good luck charm. Fireworks start on New Year's Eve and continue till the next day.

### ***United States***

Times Square in New York is a famous place where everyone gathers on New Year's eve. The tradition is to drop the huge New Year's eve ball from the Times Square flag pole when it is just 1 minute to midnight. When the ball drops, it releases thousands of confetti, messages on colored paper. These messages have been left by the local public days before the New Year celebrations.

People from Southern United States believe in eating black eyed peas and turnip greens on New Year. The peas represent coins and the turnip greens represent dollars. They believe that by doing this, the New Year will bring them good money.

### ***Sydney, Australia***

The world's largest firework show on New Year's is held here. Though the show lasts only for 12 minutes, starting at the stroke of midnight, the beautiful extravaganza attracts people to be a part of this celebration from all over the world.

### ***The Philippines***

People here want the new year to bring in more money and prosperity. Thus, they dress up in polka dotted clothes and gather in streets and localities, throwing coins at midnight or by keeping coins in pots and shaking them in their own homes.

### ***Greece***

For the Greeks January 1st is also Saint Basil's Day, one of their forefathers. It is the day for gift giving, telling stories and leaving presents at midnight in children's shoes. Every Greek family bakes a cake on this day which has a silver or gold coin hidden inside. The cake slices are passed to everyone and whoever gets the coin is believed to have a lucky year ahead.

(Source: <https://mocomi.com/new-year-celebrations-around-the-world/>)

*Fill in the blank with the name of the country with specific New Year celebration.*

*In which country...*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ eating certain types of vegetables is believed to bring good money.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ people hide a coin inside a cake.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ people have the tradition of throwing coins at midnight.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ people drop a special huge ball from the flag pole just before midnight.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ there is the world largest firework show.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ people have the tradition of throwing white flowers into the sea.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ people eat a certain number of fruits to have good luck.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ white clothes are considered good luck charm.

**Exercise 8: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change, using the words given.**

1. There are three studio albums in iKON's discography.

→ iKON has \_\_\_\_\_.

2. It's possible that Lan will not come to my birthday party.

→ Lan might \_\_\_\_\_.

3. My grandparents become older every time I see them.

→ My grandparents are \_\_\_\_\_.

4. She is the most kind-hearted person I have ever met.

→ I have never met \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I'm sure that is Mark at the door.

→ That must \_\_\_\_\_.

6. If we cut down more trees, the environment will become more polluted.

→ The more trees \_\_\_\_\_.

7. I think there would be more people at the meeting, but the actual number was smaller.

→ The actual number \_\_\_\_\_.

8. I have never read a more intriguing book than *The Song of Achilles*.

→ *The Song of Achilles* \_\_\_\_\_.

9. The time I had was not enough to finish the assignment.

→ I had \_\_\_\_\_.

10. I don't think you should go out without asking for your mother's permission.

→ You oughtn't \_\_\_\_\_.

11. She promises to call me when she arrives at the airport.

→ As soon as \_\_\_\_\_.

12. I have never tasted a better pizza before.

→ This is the \_\_\_\_\_.

13. Are there any posters in your room?

→ Do you \_\_\_\_\_?

14. The cost of living keeps rising from year to year.

→ The living cost gets \_\_\_\_\_.



15. I'm tired of clearing your debts for you. I will never do that again.

→ I will clear \_\_\_\_\_.

# UNIT 7: TELEVISION

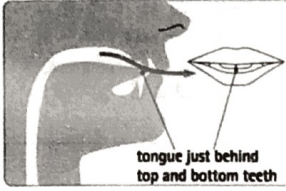
## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

	
<b>noun</b>  comedy talk show documentary musical audience viewer	<b>adjective</b>  entertaining educational hilarious informative captivating successful

### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Phát âm: /θ/ vs. /ð/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Lưỡi		
/θ/	Ngắn	Đặt ở vị trí ngay sau hàm trên và hàm dưới, rồi đẩy	Bật hơi, không có tiếng	
/ð/	Ngắn	hơi qua khe hở	Không bật hơi, có tiếng	

• Âm /θ/ và /ð/ đều có thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa chữ cái th. Phân biệt:

/θ/	thirty	Thursday	month	birthday
/ð/	this	that	mother	other

#### 2. Trọng âm của từ có 3 âm tiết

Các từ có 3 âm tiết thường nhận trọng âm thứ nhất khi từ kết thúc bằng các đuôi:

-ate	decorate	/'dekəreit/	celebrate	/'selɪbreɪt/
-ous	dangerous	/'deɪndʒərəs/	generous	/'dʒenərəs/
-ute	constitute	'kɒnstɪtju:t/	institute	/'ɪnstɪtju:t/

-ite	opposite	/ 'ɒpəzɪt/	dynamite	/ daɪnəmaɪt/
-y/-fy/-ply	family	/ 'fæməli/	multiply	/ 'mʌltɪplaɪ/
-ise	criticise	/ 'krɪtɪsaɪz/	compromise	/ 'kɒmprəmaɪz/

### III. Ngữ pháp

#### 1. H/Wh- questions

##### a. Các từ để hỏi trong tiếng Anh

who (ai)	whom (ai)	what (cái gì)	whose (của ai)
where (ở đâu)	which (cái nào)	when (khi nào)	why (tại sao)
how (thế nào)	how much (bao nhiêu)	how many (bao nhiêu)	how long (bao lâu)
how far (bao xa)	how old (bao nhiêu tuổi)	how often (bao lâu một lần)	what time (mấy giờ)

##### + Lưu ý

- *Who* là từ để hỏi chỉ người, có thể được sử dụng như:
  - chủ ngữ của câu hỏi: e.g. Who is talking?
  - tân ngữ của câu hỏi: e.g. Who are you talking to?
  - bổ ngữ của câu hỏi: e.g. Who is your best friend?
- *Whom* là từ để hỏi chỉ người, đóng vai trò tân ngữ trong câu hỏi, trong trường hợp từ để hỏi đứng sau giới từ, ta bắt buộc dùng *whom* để chỉ người.

E.g. *Whom/Who are you talking to?*

*To whom who are you talking?*

- *Which* có thể được sử dụng để hỏi về một người hoặc vật khi ta cần đưa ra sự lựa chọn/ xác định người/ vật trong một nhóm. Ta cũng dùng *which* trước *one* và *of* trong câu hỏi.

E.g. *I've decided to buy one of these shirts. Which one should I choose?*

*Which of you would like to speak?*

##### b. Các loại câu hỏi và nguyên tắc đặt câu hỏi

- Trong câu hỏi chủ ngữ (từ để hỏi *what*, *who* đóng vai trò chủ ngữ trong câu), ta chia động từ sau đó theo chủ ngữ số ít.

E.g. *Who wants ice-cream?*

*What has been done to prepare for the feast?*

- Với các loại câu hỏi còn lại (câu hỏi tân ngữ, bổ ngữ, ... với từ để hỏi đóng vai trò tương đương)
- Nếu trong câu có động từ *to be* (am, is, are, was, were) và các động từ khuyết thiếu (*can, could, may, might*), ta đảo các động từ đó lên trước chủ ngữ.
- Với các trường hợp động từ thường, tùy theo từng thì và chủ ngữ để thêm trợ động từ tương ứng (*do, does, did, have, ...*)

## 2. Liên từ (Conjunctions)

Liên từ/ từ nối là từ dùng để kết hợp các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hay câu với nhau.

Trong đó:

	Liên từ đẳng lập	Liên từ phụ thuộc
<b>Chức năng</b>	Dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ cùng một loại, hoặc các mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ, ...)	Dùng để nối cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau - mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu;
<b>Vị trí</b>	- Luôn luôn đứng giữa 2 từ hoặc 2 mệnh đề mà nó liên kết; - Nếu nối các mệnh đề độc lập thì luôn có dấu phẩy đứng trước liên từ;	- Thường đứng đầu mệnh đề phụ; - Mệnh đề phụ thuộc có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính nhưng phải luôn được bắt đầu bằng một liên từ;
<b>Các liên từ</b>	- Chỉ sự thêm vào: and; - Chỉ sự tương phản đối lập: but; - Chỉ kết quả: so; - Chỉ sự lựa chọn: or;	- Chỉ nguyên nhân, lý do: because; - Chỉ hai hành động trái ngược nhau về mặt logic: although;
<b>Ví dụ</b>	- I'll come and see you soon. - His mother won't be there, but his father might. - It is raining, so I can't go camping	- Last night we came late because it rained heavily. - Although the car is old, it is still reliable.

### • Các cấu trúc biến đổi tương đương thường gặp

(1) **because + S + V → because of + noun/V<sub>ing</sub>**

*Last night we came late because it rained heavily.*

→ *Last night we came late because of the heavy rain*

(2.1) **Although + S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>1</sub>, S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>. → Despite/In spite of + V<sub>ing</sub>, S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>. (nếu hai vế câu đồng chủ ngữ)**

*Although the car is old, it is still reliable.*

→ *Despite being old, the car is still reliable.*

**(2.2) Although + S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>1</sub>, S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>. → Despite/In spite of + noun (phrase), S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>. (nếu hai vế câu khác chủ ngữ)**

*Last night we came on time although it rained heavily.*

→ *Last night we came on time despite the heavy rain.*

**(2.3) Although + S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>1</sub>, S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>. → S<sub>1</sub> + V<sub>1</sub>, but S<sub>2</sub> + V<sub>2</sub>.**

*Although the car is old, it is still reliable.*

→ *The car is old, but it is still reliable.*

*Last night we came on time although it rained heavily.*

→ *Last night it rained heavily, but we came on time.*

**(4) neither...nor và either...or**

- **either** đi cùng với trợ động từ dạng phủ định (don't / doesn't / didn't...), còn **neither** đi cùng với câu khẳng định (bản thân *neither* mang nghĩa phủ định).

- **either...or** được sử dụng để đưa ra sự lựa chọn giữa hai khả năng, hoặc cái này hoặc cái kia; **neither...nor** được sử dụng để phủ định cả hai khả năng.

*Either you leave me alone or I will call the police.*

*I'm not sure where Maria's from. She's either Spanish or Italian.*

*Neither Chris nor Paul came to the party.*

*There was an accident outside our house, but we neither saw nor heard anything.*

*I don't like either tea or coffee. = I like neither tea nor coffee.*

*He doesn't speak either English or French. = He speaks neither English nor French.*

## **B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG**

### **I. Từ vựng**

**Exercise 1: Fill in the blank with given words or phrases.**

<i>comedies</i>	<i>long</i>	<i>programme</i>	<i>captivating</i>	<i>local</i>
<i>educational</i>	<i>audience</i>	<i>informative</i>	<i>broadcast</i>	<i>famous</i>

1. I enjoy watching \_\_\_\_\_ because they can help me relax after a long day.

2. It is necessary that we support \_\_\_\_\_ television.

3. The live programme is being \_\_\_\_\_ in 30 minutes.
4. I love this show because it is very \_\_\_\_\_.
5. This TV show is too \_\_\_\_\_; it's almost 2 hours!
6. That MC is really \_\_\_\_\_, he appears on many shows.
7. This programme is so \_\_\_\_\_, I can learn a lot from it.
8. Today's television has a lot of news, they are very \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Each \_\_\_\_\_ on VTV3 usually lasts for about 30 minutes.
10. A show needs a full \_\_\_\_\_ in order to be successful.

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given at the end of the sentence.**

1. It's a shame that there are not many \_\_\_\_\_ shows on TV. EDUCATE
2. Winning game shows can make you \_\_\_\_\_. FAME
3. This show makes me sleepy, it's so \_\_\_\_\_. BORE
4. Broadway is where many \_\_\_\_\_ talents come from. MUSIC
5. Tao Quan is a \_\_\_\_\_ show hosted annually. COMEDY
6. Why are you laughing so hard? What is so \_\_\_\_\_? HILARITY
7. These brochures are really \_\_\_\_\_. You'll know where to go. INFORM
8. That book must be \_\_\_\_\_. She's been reading it for hours. CAPTIVATE
9. Her books are always \_\_\_\_\_ and this one is no exception. ENTERTAIN
10. Is it weird when I'm into music but don't like \_\_\_\_\_? MUSIC

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct groups.**

bath	thunder	these	than	theme	them
those	through	that	both	without	with
although	think	throne	theory	worthy	gather
thoughtful	leather	together	thousand	bother	author
/θ/			/ð/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>th</u> ink	B. <u>th</u> row	C. <u>th</u> ose	D. <u>th</u> irst
---------------------	------------------	------------------	-------------------

2. A. <u>wealthy</u>	B. <u>than</u>	C. <u>teeth</u>	D. <u>mouth</u>
3. A. <u>ethnic</u>	B. <u>leather</u>	C. <u>neither</u>	D. <u>that</u>
4. A. <u>thorough</u>	B. <u>author</u>	C. <u>although</u>	D. <u>health</u>
5. A. <u>other</u>	B. <u>together</u>	C. <u>within</u>	D. <u>method</u>
6. A. <u>they</u>	B. <u>father</u>	C. <u>thank</u>	D. <u>mother</u>
7. A. <u>therapy</u>	B. <u>thunder</u>	C. <u>gather</u>	D. <u>thoughtful</u>
8. A. <u>thin</u>	B. <u>this</u>	C. <u>other</u>	D. <u>these</u>
9. A. <u>earth</u>	B. <u>the</u>	C. <u>smooth</u>	D. <u>weather</u>
10. A. <u>threaten</u>	B. <u>worthy</u>	C. <u>bath</u>	D. <u>birth</u>

**Exercise 3: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. swallow	B. amazement	C. delicate	D. concentrate
2. A. clarify	B. understand	C. recognise	D. populate
3. A. delicate	B. conqueror	C. magnify	D. sensation
4. A. computer	B. beautiful	C. successful	D. condition
5. A. control	B. urbanised	C. solitude	D. criticise
6. A. organise	B. advertise	C. adventure	D. fabulous
7. A. consider	B. improvise	C. simplify	D. attitude
8. A. institute	B. solitude	C. marvellous	D. tremendous
9. A. opposite	B. attribute	C. jealous	D. simplify
10. A. constitute	B. dynamite	C. impolite	D. hesitate

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Choose the correct answer.**

- \_\_\_\_\_ furniture would you like to have in your new house?  
A. How many      B. How much      C. How long      D. How often
- \_\_\_\_\_ celebrity do you like the most?  
A. Which      B. Who      C. What      D. Whom
- This restaurant has excellent menu, \_\_\_\_\_ it usually gets crowded at the weekend.  
A. although      B. despite      C. because      D. so
- Can you go buy some milk, there isn't \_\_\_\_\_ left in the fridge.  
A. much      B. some      C. many      D. a little

5. I just watched the weather forecast, it \_\_\_\_\_ to rain tomorrow.

- A. will                      B. is                      C. is going                      D. goes

6. \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that studying is hard, students can have a good time at school.

- A. Although                      B. Due                      C. Because                      D. Despite

7. \_\_\_\_\_ you wake up early, you will not catch the 6:30 bus.

- A. If                      B. Unless                      C. Although                      D. So that

8. His plan for tomorrow is \_\_\_\_\_ tennis from 7 A.M to 9 A.M.

- A. practices                      B. practising                      C. will practice                      D. practice

9. \_\_\_\_\_ Anne stays up very late, she still manages to wake up early.

- A. But                      B. Because                      C. Although                      D. Despite

10. The naughty boy climbed on the table \_\_\_\_\_ his mother's warning.

- A. despite                      B. but                      C. although                      D. except

**Exercise 2: Write a question for the underlined part in each sentence.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - She's a doctor.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - He's watching a gameshow at the moment.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I go to school five days a week.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - She goes to the doctor at 7:30.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - We are having dinner at a mall.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I used to ride my bike to school.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - That house? Mark lives there.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - The bank? You can go straight ahead.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I find that book captivating.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I would like two boxes of chocolate.

**Exercise 3: Write a question for each answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - My bike? I left it at home.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - His book is the bigger one.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I usually watch TV after dinner.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I'm going to the cinema tomorrow.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I play basketball at a gym centre.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I am usually exhausted after a long trip.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ? - I often go there to get more food.

8. \_\_\_\_\_? - Because I was too ill to come to class.
9. \_\_\_\_\_? - I prefer the one with bright colour.
10. \_\_\_\_\_? - I have English lessons every other day.

**Exercise 4: Use *and, but, so, because, or although* to complete the following sentences.**

1. She gets lost frequently, \_\_\_\_\_ she always brings a map with her.
2. He is full \_\_\_\_\_ he still gets another bread.
3. The cashier rings up a cola \_\_\_\_\_ a snack.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the student always sleeps in, he is never late for school.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ it is going to rain, we bring an umbrella with us.
6. I am not going to forgive her, \_\_\_\_\_ my husband agrees.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ she'd looked up the word in dictionary, she couldn't remember its meaning.
8. I was ready to go, \_\_\_\_\_ Mark called and said that he was not coming.
9. I put the medicine on the top, \_\_\_\_\_ it will be out of my children's reach.
10. He's just grown fond of the neighbourhood, \_\_\_\_\_ his family's moving next week.

**Exercise 5: Join the sentences with *neither...nor* or *either...or* beginning as given.**

1. He doesn't speak English. He doesn't speak French.  
→ He speaks
2. The school's football team wants him. The basketball team also wants him. He is thinking of which team to join.  
→ He can choose
3. She thinks she should learn to play an instrument. She is considering between the piano and the violin.  
→ She is considering
4. I usually spend the weekend with my family, otherwise I hang out with my friends.  
→ I usually
5. He can't be the leader of the project. I also can't lead.  
→ Neither
6. They can't afford to buy a terraced house. They can't afford to buy an apartment.  
→ They can't
7. I hate travelling alone. I also hate eating out alone.  
→ I hate

8. We can eat out or cook our dinner. It doesn't matter to me.

→ I'm fine with

9. I am not going to hire a tutor. I am not going to attend an extra class.

→ I am not going to

10. I didn't know what happened to him, but I didn't care.

→ I neither

**Exercise 6: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. She can translate the document for you, so can he.

→ Either

2. He can't go on the trip this weekend, she can't go either.

→ Neither

3. Is this one your book or that one?

→ Which

4. Do you know what time the movie starts?

→ Do you know when

5. He can't speak English, so he can't study abroad.

→ Because

6. The machine doesn't work. We have to stop the production.

→ Because

7. He was so sick that he was absent from class yesterday.

→ Because of

8. Mark is very careless. That's why he is always losing his belongings.

→ Because of

9. It's raining but she still goes outside.

→ Although

10. I want to eat shrimp but I'm allergic to seafood.

→ Although

11. Although I want to watch news programme at 7 p.m., I have to attend evening classes.

→ \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_

12. Although it is dangerous, the students still trespass on the land.

→ Despite

13. Although she is wealthy, she rents a small apartment.

→ Despite

14. I really want to buy a new laptop although I have got one already.

→ In spite of

15. Many children still play with fire although their parents have warned them not to.

→ In spite of their parents'

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>ch</u> oose	B. <u>ch</u> annel	C. <u>ch</u> at	D. <u>sch</u> ool
2. A. <u>m</u> ost	B. <u>h</u> ost	C. <u>c</u> ost	D. <u>c</u> lose
3. A. <u>th</u> irsty	B. <u>Th</u> ursday	C. bro <u>th</u> er	D. clo <u>th</u>
4. A. wea <u>th</u> er	B. <u>th</u> ink	C. with <u>o</u> ut	D. al <u>th</u> ough
5. A. whe <u>n</u>	B. we <u>s</u> t	C. <u>l</u> evel	D. r <u>e</u> mix

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. relax	B. cookie	C. sorry	D. weather
2. A. visit	B. cartoon	C. boring	D. local
3. A. national	B. generate	C. attitude	D. diploma
4. A. motorbike	B. exciting	C. populous	D. festival
5. A. neither	B. feather	C. prefer	D. anything

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the given words.**

<i>give</i>	<i>foreign</i>	<i>comedy</i>	<i>languages</i>	<i>informative</i>
<i>can</i>	<i>cultures</i>	<i>available</i>	<i>entertainment</i>	<i>knowledge</i>

Television is a cheap and easy source of (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in this modern life. It provides us with access to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ news, making it easy to stay informed about world news.

There are also exclusively (3) \_\_\_\_\_ channels that increase our knowledge about the world around US. PBS and Discovery are just a few of the educational channels (4) \_\_\_\_\_. DIY channels (5) \_\_\_\_\_ access to information on cooking, home maintaining, investing, and so much more. Many people even use television to help them learn other (6) \_\_\_\_\_ like English or French. Television also helps people to gain more (7) \_\_\_\_\_ about different (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and societies, giving US a broader understanding of the world that we live in. Television

events like the Olympics or a (9) \_\_\_\_\_ can gather families and friends around, where they (10) \_\_\_\_\_ share their thoughts and feelings on the event.

**Exercise 4: Provide the correct tense of the verbs.**

1. She (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ us not to watch the television too much.
2. The sky is so cloudy and dark, I think it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He (call) \_\_\_\_\_ as soon as he (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We (come) \_\_\_\_\_ to visit our grandparents this weekend.
5. The movie (start) \_\_\_\_\_ at 7 p.m., so I (pick)you up at 6 o'clock.
6. The bus (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ in 5 minutes, so you had better hurry up.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (he / speak)English very often?
8. I (help) \_\_\_\_\_ my mother with dinner at the moment.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (you / watch)horror movies?
10. The museum (not / open) \_\_\_\_\_ until 8 a.m., so we can take it easy.

**Exercise 5: Complete these sentences using one of the verbs in the correct form.**

<i>work</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>start</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>know</i>
<i>wait</i>	<i>be</i>	<i>enjoy</i>	<i>consider</i>	<i>talk</i>

1. I always \_\_\_\_\_ video games whenever I can.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ his homework. He will turn it in on time.
3. My parents have just phoned me, they \_\_\_\_\_ their vacation to Bali.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ why she left the party without saying a word.
5. You should \_\_\_\_\_ able to win this tournament without any problem.
6. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ for FPT Group, which is the largest information technology service company in Vietnam.
7. Who \_\_\_\_\_ to Beatrix? Why does he come here so often?
8. It's too late. Neither the tour guide nor other visitors \_\_\_\_\_ for him anymore.
9. The play \_\_\_\_\_ soon. Why hasn't Mark come yet?
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ changing my job. My boss never allows me to have a day off.

**Exercise 6: Provide the correct form of the word given.**

1. Children often get \_\_\_\_\_ about cartoons and comics. EXCITE
2. Discovery channel is very \_\_\_\_\_ and useful. INFORM
3. It is advisable for children to watch \_\_\_\_\_ TV channels. EDUCATE

4. This program is very \_\_\_\_\_, I learned a lot from it. HELP
5. Watching TV is one of the most popular forms of \_\_\_\_\_. ENTERTAIN
6. I travel to learn about the \_\_\_\_\_ and differences among cultures. SIMILAR
7. I think this is one of her greatest \_\_\_\_\_. PERFORM
8. The leading man broke his leg in the middle of the \_\_\_\_\_. REHEARSE
9. I hope she will become \_\_\_\_\_ and famous someday. SUCCESS
10. Do you enjoy watching \_\_\_\_\_ or you think they are boring? DOCUMENT

**Exercise 7: Identify the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it.**

1. How many students is there in this class? \_\_\_\_\_
2. There are so much snow on the road. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Michael can play different musical instrument. \_\_\_\_\_
4. There are not much juice left in the fridge. \_\_\_\_\_
5. What time is the show being broadcasted tonight? \_\_\_\_\_
6. We should reuse and recycling bottles and cans to reduce garbage. \_\_\_\_\_
7. A lot of my friends play soccer, but not much of them play basketball. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Why don't you comes to my party next week? \_\_\_\_\_
9. There are two benchs in my room. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Where are you? Our classroom is on the three floor. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 8: Choose the best answer.**

1. Could you turn \_\_\_\_\_ the volume please? I am revising for my English test.  
A. up                      B. down                      C. on                      D. off
2. It's a bitter-sweet love story. It can make you laugh \_\_\_\_\_ cry at the same time.  
A. but                      B. or                      C. so                      D. and
3. I like watching documentaries \_\_\_\_\_ they are informative.  
A. and                      B. so                      C. but                      D. because
4. \_\_\_\_\_ does Mark wash his car? - Every Sunday afternoon.  
A. What                      B. When                      C. What time                      D. How often
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ who got slapped by Will Smith is Chris Rock.  
A. comedy                      B. comedian                      C. fun                      D. funny
6. \_\_\_\_\_ my brother and I are fascinated by motorsports.  
A. Because                      B. Both                      C. Neither                      D. So

7. *Aristotle and Dante Discover the Secrets of the Universe* is a coming-of-age young adult novel \_\_\_\_\_ family and friendship.

- A. on                      B. from                      C. at                      D. about

8. I can't find the children anywhere. Have you seen them?' - 'They \_\_\_\_\_ in the basement.'

- A. play                      B. are playing                      C. is playing                      D. plays

9. \_\_\_\_\_ times do I have to tell you, do not go out after 10 P.M.

- A. How much                      B. How many                      C. How                      D. How often

10. \_\_\_\_\_ ready now or you're going to be late for school!

- A. Get                      B. Getting                      C. Gets                      D. Get to

**Exercise 9: Read the passage and answer questions that follow.**

Los Angeles, California is the most exciting city in the USA. It's got Hollywood, Disneyland, fantastic beaches and the LA Dodgers baseball team. But it was not always exciting. In 1990, it was smaller and quieter, and Hollywood was a small village. The film studios came, the village of Hollywood changed a lot. Today, this city is becoming more popular and famous in the world. It's got more than 2,000 stars on it. In Los Angeles, it's always sunny and there are a lot of attractions: shopping centres, theatres, museums, parks,... It is one of the best cities in the world.

1. Which state is Hollywood in?

---

2. How can one describe Los Angeles' weather?

---

3. Does Los Angeles have beaches?

---

4. How many stars does Los Angeles have?

---

5. How can one describe Los Angeles in 1990?

---

**Exercise 10: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. It takes me about two hours each day to do my homework.

→ I spend

2. Do you have a TV in your room?

→ Is

3. He doesn't play badminton, neither do I.

→ Neither

4. She doesn't speak French very well. She still gets the job.

→ Although

5. What is the price of this bag?

→ How

6. The traffic is heavy at the moment. We won't come to the cinema on time.

→ Because of

7. Can you carry this luggage to the fifth floor for me?

→ Would you mind

8. What is your plan for next summer?

→ What are

9. Do you like the red pair of shoes or the blue one?

→ Which

10. He doesn't usually watch TV programmes.

→ He hardly.

# UNIT 8: SPORTS AND GAMES

## A - TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

		
aerobics	athletics	athlete
		
wrestling	weightlifting	surfing
		
spectator	opponent	achievement

Sports and Games		
Do	Go	Play

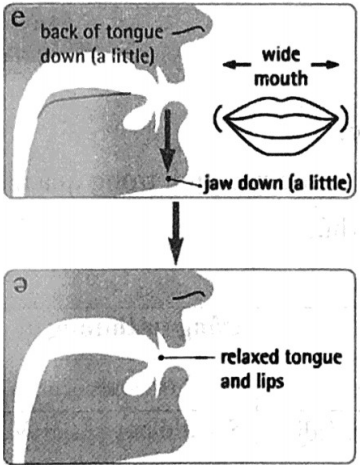
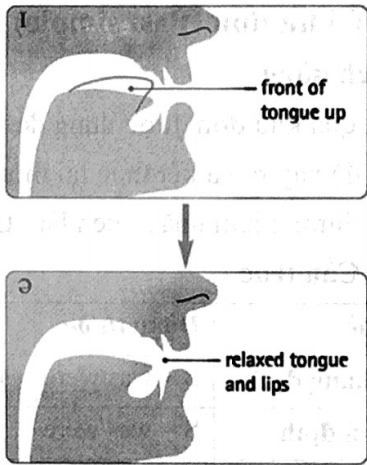
altheletics, aerobics, yoga, judo, ballet	fishing, cycling, camping, horse-riding	the guitar, football, chess, rugby
---	---	------------------------------------

❖ Lưu ý

- **do** kết hợp với các danh từ chỉ các hoạt động giải trí hoặc các môn thể thao trong nhà, không liên quan tới trái bóng, thường mang tính cá nhân và không mang tính chiến đấu, ganh đua.
- **play** kết hợp với các danh từ chỉ môn thể thao liên quan đến trái bóng hoặc một vật tương tự trái bóng như trái cầu/ quả cầu, có tính chất ganh đua với đối thủ khác.
- **go** kết hợp với cấu trúc *V-ing*, mang tên một môn thể thao hay hoạt động giải trí.

## II. Ngữ âm

### 1. Phát âm: /eə/ vs. /ɪə/

/eə/	/ɪə/
Là âm đôi, chuyển từ âm /e/ sang âm /ə/; chuyển từ vị trí miệng mở rộng, hàm dưới di chuyển xuống, về vị trí môi và lưỡi thả lỏng	Là âm đôi, chuyển từ âm /ɪ/ sang âm /ə/; chuyển từ vị trí đầu lưỡi nâng lên về vị trí môi và lưỡi thả lỏng
	

- Âm /eə/ thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- are:	care				
- air:	air	chair	hair	fair	stair
- ear:	wear				
- ere:	where				
- aer:	aeroplane				

- Âm /ɪə/ thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- ea:	real				
- ear:	ear	beard	clear	hear	nearly
- eer:	beer	cheer			
- ere:	here	we're			

## 2. Hậu tố nhận trọng âm

Các từ có hậu tố sau có trọng âm luôn rơi vào chính nó:

- oo bamboo, kangaroo
- ee teenager, refugee
- eer engineer, volunteer
- ese Vietnamese, Japanese
- ette cigarette, novelette
- esque picturesque
- self themselves, herself
- ect effect, correct
- fer prefer, refer

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Quá khứ đơn (Past simple)

#### a. Cách dùng

Thì quá khứ đơn được dùng để nói về việc:

- đã xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm được xác định trong quá khứ;
- thường làm hoặc quen làm trong quá khứ;

#### b. Cấu trúc

Thể	Động từ <i>be</i>	Động từ thường
<b>Khẳng định</b>	S + was/were + noun/adj.	S + Vpast simple (+ O).
<b>Phủ định</b>	S + was/were + not + noun/adj.	S + did not + V (+ O).
<b>Nghi vấn</b>	Was/ Were + S + noun/adj? → Yes, S + was/were. → No, S + wasn't/weren't.	Did + S + V (+ O)? → Yes, S + did. → No, S + didn't.

#### c. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Trong câu ở thì quá khứ đơn thường xuất hiện các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như:

- *yesterday, last night/week/month!...;*

- *two hours/two weeks ago*,
- *in* + thời gian trong quá khứ (e.g.: *in 1990*),
- *when* + S + Ved.

**d. Cách thêm -ed vào sau động từ theo quy tắc**

Quy tắc	Ví dụ
Ta thêm "ed" vào đằng sau hầu hết các động từ	want - wanted
	look - looked
Động từ kết thúc bằng đuôi "e" hoặc "ee" ta chỉ thêm -d và cuối động từ.	live - lived
	love - loved
Động từ tận cùng là một phụ âm + "y", ta chuyển "y" thành "i" và thêm -ed.	cry - cried
	study - studied
Động từ một âm tiết, tận cùng bằng một nguyên âm + một phụ âm (trừ những từ kết thúc bằng h, w, x, y), ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm trước khi thêm "ed".	stop - stopped
	plan - planned

**2. Câu mệnh lệnh (Imperatives)**

- Câu mệnh lệnh là câu dùng để sai khiến, ra lệnh hoặc đề nghị một người khác làm một việc gì đó. Chủ ngữ của câu mệnh lệnh được ngầm hiểu là *you*.
- Câu mệnh lệnh luôn được dùng ở thì hiện tại đơn và dạng thức nguyên thể của động từ.

Dạng	Khẳng định	Phủ định
<b>Cấu trúc</b>	Verb + object (tân ngữ)	Don't verb + object/preposition
	Verb + prepositional (giới từ)	
<b>Ví dụ</b>	Open the door. Come in. Sit down.	Don't open the window. Don't cry. Don't stand up.
<b>Lưu ý</b>	Có thể dùng <i>please</i> (làm ơn, xin mời) trong câu mệnh lệnh làm cho câu nhẹ nhàng hơn và lịch sự hơn, có thể đặt ở đầu hoặc ở cuối câu.	

**3. Một số động từ theo sau bởi *to V* và *V-ing***

+ to V	+ V-ing
remember: nhớ phải làm	avoid: tránh, hạn chế làm
forget: quên phải làm	give up: từ bỏ try: thử làm
try: cố gắng	consider: cân nhắc

learn: học	look forward to: mong chờ
promise: hứa	stop: dừng lại
dare: dám	keep: tiếp tục, duy trì
allow: cho phép	

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Put the word in the correct box.**

wrestling	horse-riding	basketball	sailing	gymnastics
mountain-climbing	yoga	karate	ice-skating	volleyball
baseball	crossword	hide-and-seek	golf	darts
diving	cricket	martial arts	aerobics	chess
table tennis	bowling	exercise	riding	board games
<b>do</b>		<b>play</b>		<b>go</b>

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with given words or phrases.**

<i>spectators</i>	<i>audience</i>	<i>viewers</i>	<i>athletes</i>	<i>athletics</i>
<i>achievement</i>	<i>opponent</i>	<i>participation</i>	<i>competitive</i>	<i>weightlifting</i>

- Being the Olympic champion at such a young age was a remarkable \_\_\_\_\_.
- The theatre is trying to attract a wider \_\_\_\_\_ to come and see their latest play.
- They wanted to build a stadium that could hold a million \_\_\_\_\_.
- Romantic movies are losing their \_\_\_\_\_ to more captivating series like *Sherlock* or *Brooklyn Nine-Nine*.
- You have to be trained carefully before you can do \_\_\_\_\_.
- A back injury will prevent your active \_\_\_\_\_ in any sports for a while.

7. I cannot go jogging for more than 15 minutes. \_\_\_\_\_ is not the kind of sports that I can take part in.
8. Over 45,476 \_\_\_\_\_ from 11 nations competed in the 31<sup>st</sup> edition of the Southeast Asian Games.
9. Liverpool is a tough \_\_\_\_\_, competing against Manchester City to be this year's champion.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ sports encourage children to work together as a team.

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct groups.**

care <u>er</u>	de <u>ar</u> ly	secreta <u>r</u> ial	f <u>ea</u> r	sh <u>are</u>	h <u>are</u>
cle <u>a</u> r	ne <u>a</u> r	upsta <u>ir</u> s	ye <u>a</u> r	fa <u>ir</u> y	ai <u>r</u> port
be <u>e</u> r	inter <u>i</u> or	super <u>i</u> or	sm <u>ea</u> r	premi <u>e</u> r	gar <u>i</u> sh
we <u>a</u> ry	var <u>i</u> ous	engine <u>e</u> r	prepa <u>r</u> e	libra <u>r</u> ian	he <u>i</u> r
/eə/			/ɪə/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. h <u>a</u> ir	B. st <u>a</u> re	C. la <u>i</u> r	D. we <u>a</u> ry
2. A. b <u>ea</u> r	B. d <u>ee</u> r	C. f <u>ea</u> r	D. ste <u>er</u>
3. A. b <u>ea</u> rish	B. p <u>ee</u> r	C. sm <u>ea</u> r	D. que <u>er</u>
4. A. t <u>ea</u> r	B. b <u>ee</u> r	C. ai <u>r</u> port	D. m <u>er</u> e
5. A. sp <u>he</u> re	B. cl <u>ea</u> r	C. sh <u>ea</u> r	D. sw <u>ea</u> r
6. A. a <u>e</u> roplane	B. pa <u>r</u> ent	C. n <u>ea</u> rly	D. a <u>r</u> ea
7. A. ch <u>ee</u> r	B. ste <u>er</u>	C. engin <u>ee</u> r	D. w <u>ea</u> r
8. A. h <u>ea</u> d	B. inst <u>ea</u> d	C. br <u>ea</u> st	D. wh <u>ea</u> t
9. A. b <u>a</u> ng	B. l <u>a</u> tt <u>er</u>	C. sl <u>a</u> ng	D. f <u>a</u> ng
10. A. wh <u>er</u> e	B. l <u>ee</u> r	C. h <u>ei</u> r	D. th <u>ei</u> rs

**Exercise 3: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. lefty	B. hungry	C. alive	D. harmful
-------------	-----------	----------	------------

2. A. sporty	B. service	C. hunter	D. embrace
3. A. suspend	B. football	C. tennis	D. seldom
4. A. prevalence	B. disturbance	C. limited	D. conquering
5. A. galaxy	B. addition	C. insistence	D. related
6. A. policeman	B. national	C. dependence	D. decision
7. A. maximum	B. video	C. collection	D. cultural
8. A. ensure	B. credit	C. shower	D. cruel
9. A. tropical	B. motorist	C. formula	D. approval
10. A. candidate	B. arrogant	C. parachute	D. solution

### III. Ngữ pháp

#### Exercise 1: Choose the correct answer.

- Mozart \_\_\_\_\_ more than 600 pieces of music.  
A. writes                      B. wrote                      C. have wrote                      D. written
- 'How did you learn to drive?' My father \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. teaches                      B. taught                      C. teaches                      D. taught
- We couldn't afford to keep our car, so we \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. sell                      B. sold                      C. sold                      D. has sell
- Dave \_\_\_\_\_ down the stairs this morning and \_\_\_\_\_ his leg.  
A. falling/breaks                      B. fall/breaks                      C. fell/broke                      D. fell/broke
- Ann \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ a dress which costed \$100.  
A. spent/bought                      B. spends/buys                      C. spent/buy                      D. spent/buyed
- I \_\_\_\_\_ to go into the woods for the picnic this weekend.  
A. plan                      B. am planning                      C. planned                      D. planning
- Marry used to \_\_\_\_\_ swimming every Thursday.  
A. go                      B. goes                      C. went                      D. going
- \_\_\_\_\_ did you learn to play the piano?  
A. When                      B. Did                      C. Were                      D. Who
- Marry is still \_\_\_\_\_ whether to join the music or the baking club.

A. consider                      B. considers                      C. considering                      D. considered

10. She \_\_\_\_\_ me her money, and I promise to pay her back soon.

A. borrows                      B. lending                      C. lends                      D. borrowing

**Exercise 2: Write a question for the underlined part in each sentence.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_? She was a doctor before retiring.

2. \_\_\_\_\_? I watched TV all day yesterday.

3. \_\_\_\_\_? I used to go to school 5 days a week.

4. \_\_\_\_\_? She learned to play the piano at six.

5. \_\_\_\_\_? I was at school yesterday morning.

6. \_\_\_\_\_? She used to be a part time engineer.

7. \_\_\_\_\_? I couldn't swim when I was 12.

8. \_\_\_\_\_? She had to study all day so she couldn't go play with us.

9. \_\_\_\_\_? I used to go to the cinema with my mother when I was younger.

10. \_\_\_\_\_? She wasn't a good student then.

**Exercise 3: Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form.**

<i>hurt</i>	<i>catch</i>	<i>buy</i>	<i>spend</i>	<i>teach</i>
<i>fall</i>	<i>cost</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>import</i>	<i>retire</i>

1. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ himself badly when he was climbing a tree last week.

2. That nation didn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything in the past, but now products from other countries can be found nearly wherever people go.

3. I \_\_\_\_\_ the entire morning trying to fix the projector.

4. Did you arrive early enough to \_\_\_\_\_ the 7 a.m. train?

5. Although I really liked that shirt, I didn't buy it. It \_\_\_\_\_ too much.

6. He promised to \_\_\_\_\_ me how to play sudoku.

7. There wasn't enough food for the dinner, so I went and \_\_\_\_\_ some more.

8. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ to Leeds for two years to get his MSc degree.

9. She couldn't derive any satisfaction from her work, so she chose to \_\_\_\_\_.

10. He wasn't looking where he was going so, he tripped and \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 4: Complete the sentences using the following verbs in the correct form.**

1. Don't forget (turn) \_\_\_\_\_ off all the lights before you leave the classroom.

2. Allow me (help) \_\_\_\_\_ you. I have experience with broken computer.

3. Promise (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ your homework next time, or I will punish you.
4. Avoid (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ during rush hours. You can save a lot of time.
5. Remember (wake) \_\_\_\_\_ up at 7 o'clock. We have to catch an early flight.
6. Look forward to (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ the museum next week. They have installed 3D models of dinosaurs and many extinct animals.
7. Dare (be) \_\_\_\_\_ different. Nobody is exactly the same.
8. Try (revise) \_\_\_\_\_ carefully. We are having a Maths exam on Wednesday.
9. If you have a lot of free time, try (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ to speak another language.
10. If you want to have a better health, give up (smoke) \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Consider (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for another job. You look exhausted these days.
12. Stop (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ so loudly! I'm trying to memorise new English words.
13. Keep (work) \_\_\_\_\_ hard, and you will get your promotion soon.
14. Don't dare (cross) \_\_\_\_\_ the red light. You might cause an accident.
15. Try (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ the exercise yourself. You have done it before.

**Exercise 5: Use imperatives to make sentences suitable for each situation.**

1. Your little brother is playing music loudly. You want him to stop.  
→ 'Stop \_\_\_\_\_ ,
2. You want your children to be careful when they cross the streets.  
→ 'Remember \_\_\_\_\_ ,
3. Your kid spends too much time playing video games. You want her to stop.  
→ 'Don't dare \_\_\_\_\_ ,
4. You need a car to travel from Hanoi to Bac Ninh. You borrow it from your father.  
→ 'Allow \_\_\_\_\_ ,
5. Your children often stay up late. You don't want them to do that.  
→ 'Stop \_\_\_\_\_ ,
6. You want your child to finish his homework before you get home from work.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_ 'Don't \_\_\_\_\_ forget \_\_\_\_\_ ,
7. Your friend is wearing a dress that is too tight. You want to give her some advice.  
→ 'Try \_\_\_\_\_ ,
8. Your friend's car is not reliable. It breaks down often. You want to give some advice.

→ 'Consider \_\_\_\_\_ ,

9. Going sailing can be dangerous for children without adults. You tell your children:

→ 'Avoid \_\_\_\_\_ ,

10. You hope your boyfriend will tell you first when he has any problems.

→ 'Promise \_\_\_\_\_ ,

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>clear</u>	B. <u>tear</u>	C. <u>real</u>	D. <u>fear</u>
2. A. <u>bare</u>	B. <u>care</u>	C. <u>merely</u>	D. <u>air</u>
3. A. <u>dare</u>	B. <u>career</u>	C. <u>deer</u>	D. <u>smear</u>
4. A. <u>fare</u>	B. <u>chair</u>	C. <u>square</u>	D. <u>engineer</u>
5. A. <u>beard</u>	B. <u>vegetarian</u>	C. <u>cheer</u>	D. <u>gear</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. badminton	B. always	C. volleyball	D. aerobics
2. A. karate	B. swimming	C. running	D. tennis
3. A. equipment	B. skateboard	C. favourite	D. racket
4. A. stadium	B. football	C. sailing	D. event
5. A. popular	B. sportsman	C. competition	D. marathon

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the given words.**

<i>illnesses</i>	<i>beneficial</i>	<i>essential</i>	<i>join</i>	<i>have</i>
------------------	-------------------	------------------	-------------	-------------

Sports is one of the most (1) \_\_\_\_\_ activities that a person should pursue in his/her life. It is a tool to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a healthful body and an active brain. A person who follows sports is less likely to expose to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and bodily problems. Sports is an activity that everyone of any age and gender can (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Schools should make it compulsory because it is as (5) \_\_\_\_\_ as education.

**Exercise 4: Provide the correct tense of the verbs.**

1. I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ a talk show last night. It was really informative.

2. First, we (do) \_\_\_\_\_ some work, and then we (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ some orange juice when we were too tired.

3. Suddenly, the dog lunged at me and (bite) \_\_\_\_\_ my hand.
4. The Wright brothers (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ the first airplane in 1903.
5. I think I (just/ hear) \_\_\_\_\_ someone open the front door.
6. I tripped on my way down the stairs and (break) \_\_\_\_\_ my arm.
7. The police finally (catch) \_\_\_\_\_ the robbers after a long car chase.
8. How many times (you/ read) \_\_\_\_\_ that brochure?
9. It was so embarrassing that I (forget) \_\_\_\_\_ to bring my money.
10. If I meet him tomorrow, I (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ him about the change in the schedule.
11. The last time I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ Mark was two weeks ago.
12. I (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ Mark since he moved to Manchester.
13. She (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday cake for her son in the kitchen now.
14. We (waste) \_\_\_\_\_ too much electricity at the moment.
15. When the phone rang, I (water) \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers in the garden.

**Exercise 5: Complete these sentences using one of the verbs in the correct form.**

<i>talk</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>use</i>	<i>be x 3</i>	<i>buy</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>cook</i>
-------------	-----------	-------------	------------	---------------	------------	------------	-------------

1. \_\_\_\_\_ the working condition ideal when you were employed by Google?
2. My mother taught me how to \_\_\_\_\_ a fax.
3. My best friend \_\_\_\_\_ a dog when he was younger.
4. My visit to Google headquarter \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful.
5. What time \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ the housework yesterday?
6. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ very tired after the trip.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of gifts for my little sister.
8. Lan and Mai \_\_\_\_\_ sharks, dolphins and turtles at Star aquarium yesterday.
9. Trung \_\_\_\_\_ chicken and rice for dinner in the kitchen.
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ about their holiday in Hoi An when I came in.

**Exercise 6: Provide the correct form of the word given.**

1. I couldn't find any \_\_\_\_\_ between the two pictures. DIFFERENT
2. I am going to have a \_\_\_\_\_ check-up next Monday. MEDICINE
3. What is the correct \_\_\_\_\_ of this word? PRONOUNCE
4. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to eat too much sugar and fatty food. HEALTH
5. Every day, there are many \_\_\_\_\_ from Da Nang to Ho Chi Minh city. FLY

6. He didn't win the championship, so he felt very \_\_\_\_\_. HOPE
7. The government is trying very hard to deal with the problem of \_\_\_\_\_. POOR
8. Don't be so \_\_\_\_\_. I'm not going to give you \$1000. RIDICULE
9. I think everyone wants to \_\_\_\_\_ at whatever they do. EXCELLENT
10. She wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ prepared for the bad news. MENTAL

**Exercise 7: Identify the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it.**

1. How many students is there in this class? \_\_\_\_\_
2. Michael can play different musical instrument. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Peter was boring, so he played hockey on his PS5. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Avoid arrive at 5 p.m. There won't be anyone home. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Phong often goes bowl with his dad in his free time. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Mary reads that interesting story when she was small. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The shop closed ten minutes last. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I can't speak French, neither can't my brother. \_\_\_\_\_
9. You have to wake up early every day, have you? \_\_\_\_\_
10. I can't stand this. Stop to leave the dishes until the next day. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 8: Choose the best answer.**

1. Last weekend, my friends and I \_\_\_\_\_ a football match.  
A. watch                      B. watching                      C. watched                      D. watches
2. My \_\_\_\_\_ sports are badminton and basketball.  
A. fantastic                      B. favourite                      C. exhausted                      D. sporty
3. You should buy a new \_\_\_\_\_ to play badminton.  
A. pedal                      B. table                      C. racket                      D. shoes
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a running race of over 26 miles.  
A. Marathon                      B. Weightlifting                      C. Boxing                      D. Athletics
5. Annie love doing sports. She's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. hungry                      B. happy                      C. funny                      D. sporty
6. It's fantastic to \_\_\_\_\_ gymnastics.  
A. have                      B. make                      C. get                      D. do
7. The sports \_\_\_\_\_ in London lasted for 2 weeks.  
A. compete                      B. competition                      C. competing                      D. competitive

8. What \_\_\_\_\_ do we need to go swimming? - A swimsuit and goggles.  
A. equipment                  B. skateboard                  C. baseball                  D. regatta
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ the fencing competition last year.  
A. win                  B. won                  C. wins                  D. will win
10. He adores \_\_\_\_\_ football with his friends.  
A. doing                  B. making                  C. playing                  D. getting
11. Table tennis is \_\_\_\_\_ difficult for him to play.  
A. too                  B. so                  C. enough                  D. such
12. \_\_\_\_\_ games such as chess is a good exercise for our brain.  
A. Indoor                  B. Outdoor                  C. Healthy                  D. Easy
13. Yesterday, he \_\_\_\_\_ judo for 3 hours.  
A. went                  B. did                  C. got                  D. played
14. Please stop \_\_\_\_\_ noise.  
A. make                  B. made                  C. making                  D. to make
15. Playing sports is \_\_\_\_\_ good way to stay away from stress.  
A. a                  B. an                  C. the                  D. 0

**Exercise 9: Read the passage and answer questions that follow.**

Watching television is an interesting and fun activity. The first television broadcast in Australia was in 1956. Back then, the pictures on a TV were black and white only. Television has changed a lot since then. There are several channels, and they show different TV programmes. In Western Australia, the main channels are ABC, Seven, Nine, Ten, and SBS. TV guides tell us what programmes are showing on which channel, and at what time on a day. Many programmes on television are episodes. They are parts of a series. These episodes usually last for either 30 minutes or a full hour. At the weekend there are interesting films. You can watch them instead of going to the cinema.

1. When was the first Australian TV broadcast?  
A. In 1986                  B. In 1956                  C. In 1965
2. How were the pictures on a TV then?  
A. colour                  B. black only                  C. black and white only
3. Are there any TV channels in Western Australia?  
A. Yes, there is                  B. Yes, there are                  C. No, they aren't
4. How can one find the broadcast schedules for their favourite TV show?

---

5. What is the usual length of TV episodes?

---

**Exercise 10: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. How long is the Red River?

→ What

2. How much did that concert ticket cost you?

→ How much

3. I did judo every Tuesday and Thursday when I was a kid.

→ I used

4. What is the height of that building?

→ How

5. I used to go to the mall with my parents every weekend.

→ I remember

6. Jenny was sick, she couldn't go to school this morning.

→ Because of

7. The last time I met him was 5 years ago.

→ I last

8. Lan went out, but she didn't finish her homework.

→ Although

9. He says he has retirement in mind.

→ He is

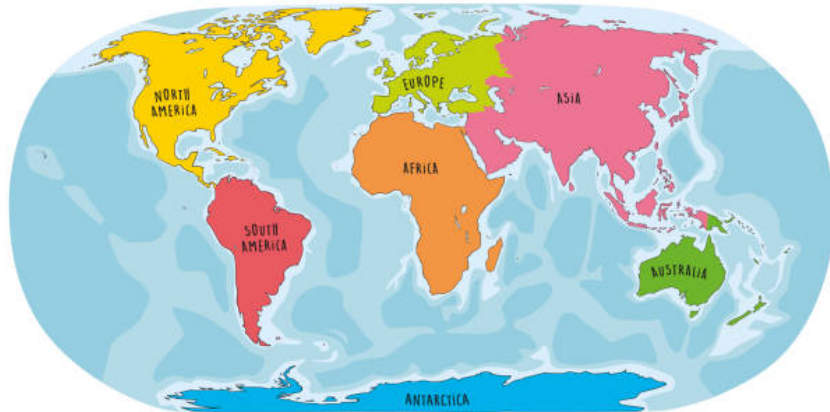
10. Her music is always played too loud.

→ She is

# UNIT 9: CITIES OF THE WORLD

## A – TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

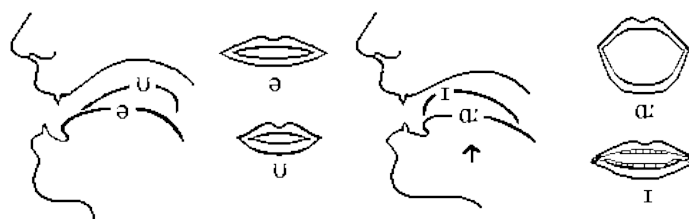


Features of cities		
Nouns	Adjectives	Verbs
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- architecture</li><li>- place of interest</li><li>- culture</li><li>- cuisine</li><li>- capital</li><li>- award</li><li>- World Heritage</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- ancient</li><li>- modern</li><li>- historic/ historical</li><li>- peaceful</li><li>- popular</li><li>- well-known</li><li>- crowded</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- symbolise</li><li>- award</li><li>- consist of</li><li>- design</li></ul>

### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Phát âm: /əʊ/ vs. /aɪ/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Môi	Lưỡi
/əʊ/	Dài	Môi thả lỏng rồi dần tạo thành khẩu hình hơi tròn, hơi vươn ra phía trước	Lưỡi thả lỏng
/aɪ/	Dài	Miệng mở rộng từ khẩu hình âm /ɑ:/ /	Đầu lưỡi hơi nâng cao gần chạm tới hàm trên tạo thành âm /ɪ/



• Âm /əʊ/ thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- o	no	cold	post	close	home	phone
- ow	know	low	show	slow		
- oa	boat	coast				
- oe	toe					

• Âm /aɪ/ thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa các nhóm chữ cái sau:

- i	like	time	white
- ie	die	lie	
- y	dry	July	why
- igh	high	night	right
- uy	buy		

## 2. Hậu tố không nhận trọng âm

Các hậu tố sau không ảnh hưởng đến trọng âm của từ:

-ment	agree	/ə'gri:/	→ agreement	/ə'gri:mənt/
-ship	leader	/'li:dər/	→ leadership	/'li:dərʃɪp/
-ness/less	care	/keə/	→ careless	/'keələs/
-er/or	invent	/ɪn'vent/	→ inventor	/ɪn'ventər/
-hood	adult	/ə'dʌlt/	→ adulthood	/ə'dʌlθʊd/
-ing	fish	/fɪʃ/	→ fishing	/'fɪʃɪŋ/
-ful	wonder	/'wʌndər/	→ wonderful	/'wʌndərfl/
-able/ible	break	/breɪk/	→ breakable	/breɪkəbl/
-ly	careless	/'keələs/	→ carelessly	/'keələslɪ/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Hiện tại hoàn thành (Present perfect)

#### a. Cấu trúc

Thể	khẳng	S + have/has	V <sub>Past Participle</sub> (+ O).
-----	-------	--------------	-------------------------------------

định		
Thể phủ định	S + have/has not	V <sub>Past Participle</sub> (+ O).
Thể nghi vấn	Have/Has + S	V <sub>Past Participle</sub> (+ O).
	→ Yes, S + have/has → No, S + haven't/hasn't	

## b. Cách sử dụng

Cách sử dụng	Dấu hiệu nhận biết
Dùng để diễn tả hành động đã bắt đầu trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp tục ở tương lai. <i>I have been a teacher for 30 years.</i> <i>He has worked as a volunteer since 2010.</i>	- since - for - so far - up to now - in the past two years
Dùng để chỉ trải nghiệm <i>I have never been to Halong before.</i> <i>This is the first time I have ever been to Hanoi.</i> <i>He has been the champion twice.</i>	- never - ever - once/ twice/ three times ... - This is the first/second time ...
Dùng để diễn tả hành động vừa mới xảy ra. <i>I have just finished my project.</i> <i>Recently there has been a rumor about her marriage.</i>	- just - recently - lately
Dùng để thể hiện khi thời điểm xảy ra sự việc không quan trọng hoặc không được biết rõ. <i>I have lost my keys.</i>	
Dùng để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra nhưng kết quả còn ở hiện tại. <i>The shoes look like new because Lan has polished them.</i>	

## 2. So sánh thì hiện tại hoàn thành và thì quá khứ đơn

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành	Thì quá khứ đơn
Dùng để diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu ở quá khứ kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp tục ở tương lai. <i>I have been a volunteer for this project for 3</i>	Dùng để diễn tả một hành động đã hoàn toàn kết thúc trong quá khứ. <i>I started as a volunteer for this project 3 months ago.</i>

<i>months.</i>	
Dùng để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng không rõ thời gian hoặc không đề cập đến thời gian. <i>Fortunately I have found my keys.</i>	Dùng để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra tại thời gian xác định trong quá khứ. <i>I found my keys when I was cleaning the house yesterday.</i>

### 3. Các cấu trúc biến đổi tương đương giữa hiện tại hoàn thành và quá khứ đơn

- *This is the first time S + have/has + P<sub>II</sub>. → S + have/has never + P<sub>II</sub> before.*

This is the first time I have seen him. → I have never seen him before.

- *S + started/began V<sub>-ing</sub> + X years ago. → S + have/has P<sub>II</sub> + for X years.*

I started studying English 3 years ago. → I have studied English for 3 years.

- *S + last V<sub>-ed</sub> when S + V<sub>-ed</sub>. → S haven't/hasn't P<sub>II</sub> + since S + V<sub>-ed</sub>.*

I last saw him when I was a student. → I haven't seen him since I was a student.

- *The last time + S + V<sub>-ed</sub> + was X years ago. → S + haven't/hasn't P<sub>II</sub> + for X years.*

→ *It's (been) + X years since s + V<sub>-ed</sub>.*

The last time she went out with him was two years ago.





→ It's two years since she last went out with him.





→ She hasn't gone out with him for two years.

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Describe the following pictures using the letters given at the beginning.**

			
1. c _____	2. a _____	3. d _____	4. p _____

			
5. I _____	6. a _____	7. a _____	8. h _____

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given at the end of the sentence.**

- He has been \_\_\_\_\_ a sum possibly of some hundreds of pounds. AWARD
- The award for best \_\_\_\_\_ went to Joaquin Phoenix for 'Joker'. ACT
- The Leaning Tower of Pisa is one of the many iconic \_\_\_\_\_ buildings around the world. ARCHITECT
- Sydney Opera House has enjoyed its great \_\_\_\_\_ among tourists for decades. POPULAR
- Vietnam is \_\_\_\_\_ for many beautiful beaches and excellent cuisine. KNOW
- Prices are often higher in Hawaii than in the \_\_\_\_\_ United States. CONTINENT
- Vietnam can offer a wide variety of \_\_\_\_\_ treasures to tourists, like the Dong Son drum or Dong Ho painting. NATION
- Hoa Lo Prison, a special \_\_\_\_\_ relic of Hanoi, has become more popular with local people in Vietnam. HISTORY
- I prefer the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere of secluded places to tourist attractions. PEACE
- Many foreigners have shown their \_\_\_\_\_ for Vietnam's nature and the people's hospitality. APPRECIATE

**Exercise 3: Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.**

There's nothing quite like the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ of going on holiday - especially after a pandemic. But having stayed put for so long, many of us have (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the stress involved in planning a break - booking annual leave, sorting (3) \_\_\_\_\_ transport to the airport, and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ all the landmarks, restaurants and bars to visit. And you should (5) \_\_\_\_\_ sure you've ticked off all those everyday tasks at home before you leave.

**A botanical dream in Cambridge**

With plenty of historic (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to discover, Cambridge has a lot more going for it than just (7) \_\_\_\_\_ university campuses. The Cambridge University Botanical is the ideal spot for solo

travellers, couples or families. Bring a book to read among the blooms, or a watercolour set to capture the seasonal flowers. The nearby Fitzwilliam Museum rivals the best European galleries with its (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of antiquities and modern art. And if you have a (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for modern and award-winning architecture, there's the Cambridge Central Mosque, the first eco-mosque in Europe, which was (10) \_\_\_\_\_ designed to minimise environmental impact. Within the mosque, there are beautiful gardens, exhibitions and a cafe.

1. A. anticipate	B. anticipated	C. anticipation	D. to anticipate
2. A. forgotten	B. forget	C. forgot	D. forgetting
3. A. in	B. out	C. at	D. of
4. A. research	B. researching	C. to research	D. researched
5. A. make	B. to make	C. made	D. making
6. A. scenery	B. view	C. spot	D. sights
7. A. theirs	B. its	C. ours	D. my
8. A. collect	B. collecting	C. collection	D. collected
9. A. taste	B. smell	C. sense	D. eye
10. A. specifically	B. typically	C. extremely	D. greatly

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct groups.**

provi <u>d</u> e	l <u>oa</u> n	charc <u>oa</u> l	g <u>ro</u> wth	frag <u>i</u> le	fell <u>ow</u>
moti <u>v</u> ation	pr <u>i</u> rate	pr <u>i</u> me	noti <u>o</u> n	ty <u>p</u> e	sir <u>e</u> n
m <u>ou</u> ld	recogni <u>s</u> e	sign	fri <u>gh</u> t	dispos <u>a</u> l	appro <u>a</u> ch
/əʊ/			/aɪ/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. h <u>o</u> pe	B. g <u>ow</u>	C. d <u>o</u> ctor	D. b <u>oa</u> t
2. A. pr <u>o</u> gress	B. d <u>o</u> pe	C. m <u>o</u> tor	D. c <u>o</u> pe
3. A. r <u>i</u> ght	B. i <u>d</u> ea	C. m <u>i</u> neral	D. tr <u>y</u>
4. A. min <u>i</u> um	B. s <u>i</u> de	C. m <u>i</u> nd	D. beh <u>i</u> nd
5. A. yell <u>ow</u>	B. l <u>oa</u> n	C. g <u>o</u> lden	D. h <u>o</u> ney



7. Why \_\_\_\_\_ down that job offer?

- A. did you turn      B. have you turned      C. did you finishes      D. you turned

8. I \_\_\_\_\_ Mark since I \_\_\_\_\_ a kid because he was my neighbour.

- A. have known - be      B. have known - was      C. knew – was      D. knew - wen

9. I \_\_\_\_\_ her letter three times but I still can't make out what she means.

- A. read      B. have read      C. reads      D. did read

10. Mai \_\_\_\_\_ Minh six months ago.

- A. married      B. marries      C. had married      D. will marry

**Exercise 2: Rewrite the sentences using Present Perfect or Past Simple.**

1. This is my first visit to Da Nang city.

→ I

2. I started reading this book last week.

→ I

3. I haven't talked to him for three days.

→ It

4. I last went to the cinema two months ago.

→ The last

5. This is the second time I have read *The Song of Achilles*.

→ I

6. It is a three-year marriage between Johnny and Kate.

→ Johnny and Kate

7. I began learning how to play the violin a year ago.

→ I

8. I last contacted Bobby when I was in Korea.

→ I have

9. The last time I went to sleep before 11 p.m. was years ago.

→ It

10. The last time I bought new clothes was two months ago.

→ It

**Exercise 3: Identify the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it.**

1. I haven't have my hair cut since last year.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. She has ever travelled abroad before. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The bus haven't arrived yet. How long will we have to wait? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Have you feed the cat yet? \_\_\_\_\_
5. I am worried because I haven't finished my homework already. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I have decided to going on holiday to Cua Lo Beach this summer. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He has played computer games since seven hours. \_\_\_\_\_
8. She hasn't received some good news for a long time. \_\_\_\_\_
9. My father hasn't watched any TV programmes for last month. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I've better have a shower. I haven't had one since Sunday. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 4: Rewrite the following sentences using the words given so that the meaning does not change.**

1. John emigrated from Korea to America in 10 years ago. (It's)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mai started to learn martial arts when she was five. (since)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
3. Andy bought this laptop a month ago. (owned)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
4. I haven't told him about the change in the schedule. (yet)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
5. His record for the 100 metres has not been broken until now. (yet)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
6. I have never eaten sashimi before. (This is)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
7. I have never met a more warm-hearted girl. (She is)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
8. This is the best novel I have ever read. (before)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
9. I last ate out last weekend. (I haven't)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
10. The last time our family gathered was five months ago. (It's)  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. sh <u>ow</u>	B. sh <u>y</u>	C. sn <u>ow</u>	D. co <u>at</u>
2. A. so <u>ul</u>	B. ho <u>st</u>	C. do <u>ugh</u>	D. gu <u>id</u> e
3. A. bo <u>wl</u>	B. ro <u>ll</u>	C. clo <u>th</u>	D. to <u>ll</u>
4. A. wi <u>th</u> er	B. wi <u>nt</u> er	C. wr <u>i</u> te	D. wi <u>d</u> ow
5. A. fi <u>gh</u> t	B. mi <u>gh</u> t	C. wi <u>ck</u>	D. rh <u>y</u> me

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. confidence	B. supportive	C. solution	D. obedient
2. A. meanwhile	B. achievement	C. hospital	D. separate
3. A. develop	B. majority	C. romantic	D. government
4. A. remember	B. company	C. technical	D. interview
5. A. electric	B. computer	C. interesting	D. fantastic

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the given words.**

- I (check) \_\_\_\_\_ the contract three times. There should be no mistake.
- He (be) \_\_\_\_\_ in hospital since last Friday.
- Martin (take) \_\_\_\_\_ the scenic routes around Son Tra Peninsula during his visit to Da Nang city.
- I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ an extremely important interview next week. I should buy a new suit.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you/find) any accommodation that is closer to your office yet?
- Mark and Johnny (know) \_\_\_\_\_ each other for more than 8 years now.
- The bus (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ at 8 a.m. You'd better hurry up.
- Amy (move) \_\_\_\_\_ to this town when she was a 5-year-old kid.
- He will always call his mother first when he (get) \_\_\_\_\_ into trouble.
- My brother is the most generous person I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 4: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given at the end of the sentence.**

- I have been to some tourist \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam like Ba Na Hills and Ha Long Bay. ATTRACT
- Korea is known for its green, hilly countryside dotted, its \_\_\_\_\_ villages, sub-tropical islands and high- tech cities. COAST

3. Paris is the capital and the city with the largest \_\_\_\_\_ in France. POPULOUS
4. London is famous for its historic palaces, \_\_\_\_\_ landmarks, and world-class museums. MAGNIFICENCE
5. Tokyo is one of the many \_\_\_\_\_ cities around the world. METROPOLIS
6. Although it's \_\_\_\_\_ to visit Rome, the city offers so much to experience. EXPENSE
7. Atlantis is a \_\_\_\_\_ island that has been mentioned frequently in books and movies. FICTION
8. The increase in the Earth's temperature has led to various \_\_\_\_\_ changes such as flooding, earthquake, or forest fires. CLIMATE
9. Lisbon is one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ and vibrant cities in Europe. CHARISMA
10. I have never visited a city that is more \_\_\_\_\_ than Da Nang. WONDER

**Exercise 5: Provide an answer or a question for each context using “just”, “yet” and “already”.**

1. John goes out. Five minutes later, the phone rings and the caller says: “Can I speak to John.”  
→ I'm afraid (go out) \_\_\_\_\_
2. You are eating in a restaurant. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away.  
→ Wait a minute! I (not/finish) \_\_\_\_\_
3. You are going to a hotel tonight. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says: “Shall I phone to reserve a table?”  
→ No, (do/it) \_\_\_\_\_
4. A friend of yours is looking for a place to stay during his business trip.  
→ Have you (find) \_\_\_\_\_
5. A friend asks: “Have you decided where to go on holiday?”  
→ I (not/decide) \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 6: Choose the best answer.**

1. You have changed a lot since the last time I \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
A. see                      B. have seen                      C. am seeing                      D. saw
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ more concerned about his salary since he was burdened with debts.  
A. grew                      B. has grown                      C. has been growing                      D. will grow
3. The services sector \_\_\_\_\_ the driving force of economic development in recent years.  
A. has become                      B. is becoming                      C. become                      D. became
4. Science and technology must \_\_\_\_\_ a decisive role to make development.

A. plays                      B. play                      C. has played                      D. played

5. Hue is one of the many tourist destinations in Vietnam with world-renowned ancient \_\_\_\_\_ and distinctive \_\_\_\_\_ traits.

A. wonderful – cultures                      B. wonder – cultural  
C. wonderful - culture                      D. wonders – cultural

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ my assignment yet.

A. hasn't finished      B. finished                      C. have finished                      D. have not finished

7. I'm so worried. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ for three hours.

A. haven't contacted      B. is contact                      C. hasn't contacted                      D. contact

8. They have yet \_\_\_\_\_ where to go for our holiday.

A. to decide                      B. didn't decide                      C. decide                      D. are deciding

9. We \_\_\_\_\_ a blackout before. And I hope we will never have to go through that.

A. have never experience                      B. have never experienced  
C. are experiencing                      D. haven't never experienced

10. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ to travel abroad this summer.

A. money too                      B. money enough                      C. enough money                      D. too money

11. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ the driving test three times without passing. He is taking it the fourth time next month.

A. taken                      B. has took                      C. has takenD. took

12. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ abroad before?

A. Have – travelled      B. Have – visited                      C. Have – went                      D. Have – were

13. I have read Paper Town three times. I'm quite sure I \_\_\_\_\_ it again.

A. have read                      B. will read                      C. read                      D. am reading

14. Kathy has worked for three different companies since she \_\_\_\_\_ two years ago.

A. graduated                      B. has graduate                      C. will graduate                      D. graduated

15. This is the first time I \_\_\_\_\_ to Mongolia.

A. has been                      B. have be                      C. has be                      D. have been

**Exercise 7: Fill in the blanks with the words from the list Use each word only once.**

<i>antisocial</i>	<i>activity</i>	<i>image</i>	<i>recognize</i>	<i>sophisticated</i>	<i>violence</i>
-------------------	-----------------	--------------	------------------	----------------------	-----------------

Over the years, video games have become more popular and (1) \_\_\_\_\_. For most people, the (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of a gamer is a man who is overweight and lazy. Because gamers sit in front of

computers all day, their lack of physical (3) \_\_\_\_\_ makes them gain weight. People also think that gamers are (4) \_\_\_\_\_ because they spend so much time alone, playing games that typically focus on killing. However, research indicates that gamers easily (5) \_\_\_\_\_ appropriate and inappropriate behaviour. In other words, they are not more likely to commit acts of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ than non-gamers.

**Exercise 8: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. This is the heaviest book I have ever owned.

→ I've

2. I have never been in a worse situation.

→ This is

3. Remember to bring your ID to the test revenue

→ Don't

4. The last time I heard this song was years ago.

→ It's

5. I started preparing for the final exam two weeks ago.

→ I have

6. People should book the flight tickets early to save money.

→ People had

7. I travelled abroad in 1997 and then again in 2008.

→ I have

8. This is the first time I have visited the London Eye.

→ I haven't

9. I haven't washed my car for months.

→ The last time

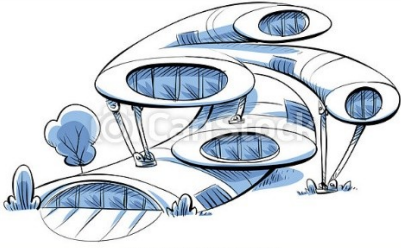
10. That is the most stunning view I have ever admired.


→ I have

# UNIT 10: OUR HOUSES IN THE FUTURE

## A – TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

Houses in the future		
Types of house	Household Appliances	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- apartment</li> <li>- flat</li> <li>- condominium</li> <li>- penthouse</li> <li>- basement</li> <li>- villa</li> <li>- cottage</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- electric lights</li> <li>- wireless TV</li> <li>- dishwasher</li> <li>- equipment</li> <li>- solar panels</li> <li>- virtual assistant</li> <li>- tractor</li> </ul>	

	Features of Future Houses
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- futuristic</li> <li>- energy-saving</li> <li>- efficient</li> <li>- customizable</li> <li>- hi-tech</li> <li>- modern</li> </ul>

### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Phát âm: /θ/ vs. /ð/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Lưu ý		
/θ/	Ngắn	Đặt ở vị trí ngay sau hàm	Bật hơi, không có tiếng	

/ð/	Ngắn		Không bật hơi, có tiếng	
-----	------	--	-------------------------	--

• Âm /θ/ và /ð/ có thể được nhận diện trong từ có chứa chữ *th*. Phân biệt:

/θ/	thirty	Thursday	month	birthday
/ð/	this	that	mother	other

## 2. Tiền tố không nhận trọng âm

Khi thêm các tiền tố sau vào (thường để hình thành từ trái nghĩa) không làm ảnh hưởng đến trọng âm của từ. Trọng âm của từ mới được hình thành rơi vào âm tiết giống với từ gốc.

-re	formation	/fɔːr'meɪʃn/	→ reformation	/ˌrefə'meɪʃn/
-dis	honest	/'ɒnɪst/	→ dishonest	/dɪs'ɒnɪst/
-mis	understand	/ˌʌndər'stænd/	→ misunderstand	/ˌmɪsʌndər'stænd/
-im	mature	/mə'tʃʊər/	→ immature	/ˌɪmə'tʃʊər/
-in	definite	/'defɪnət/	→ indefinite	/ˌɪn'defɪnət/
-il	legal	/'liːgl/	→ illegal	/ˌɪ'liːgl/
-ir	responsible	/rɪ'spɒnsəbl/	→ irresponsible	/ˌɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/
-un	employ	/ɪm'plɔɪ/	→ unemployed	/ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪ/

## III. Ngữ pháp

Khi muốn nói về dự định trong tương lai gần, chúng thường sử dụng *will* hoặc *might* cùng với động từ nguyên thể. Ngoài ra, chúng ta có thể sử dụng *hiện tại đơn*, *hiện tại tiếp diễn*, hoặc cấu trúc *be going to* tùy vào mức độ chắc chắn của hành động.





present simple	present continuous	be going to + bare infinitive	will / might + bare infinitive
thời gian biểu của tàu xe, rạp phim, chương trình TV... (cố định, ảnh hưởng tới nhiều người, không thể tùy ý thay đổi)	lịch trình đã lên kế hoạch của cá nhân chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra	- lịch trình đã lên kế hoạch của cá nhân gần như chắc chắn là sẽ xảy ra - dự đoán về việc có thể xảy ra dựa vào tình	- <i>will</i> dùng với việc chúng ta nghĩ sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai gần; - <i>might</i> dùng với việc trong tương lai gần nhưng chúng ta không

		huống hiện tại	chắc liệu nó có xảy ra không
--	--	----------------	---------------------------------

# B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

## I. Từ vựng

Exercise 1: Write the type of the house/building illustrated in the following pictures.

	
1. _____	2. _____
	
3. _____	4. _____



5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with given words or phrases.**

<i>appliances</i>	<i>modern</i>	<i>technology</i>	<i>solar</i>	<i>equip</i>
<i>electric</i>	<i>wireless</i>	<i>cottage</i>	<i>skyscraper</i>	<i>location</i>

- \_\_\_\_\_ energy is a type of renewable energy that will be used more in the future.
- Don't forget to turn off all the \_\_\_\_\_ lights before you leave the room.
- My dream is to live in a charming \_\_\_\_\_ surrounded by roses in the countryside.
- Thanks to the advancement of \_\_\_\_\_, we can use various types of machines to help in the house.
- This severe winter has caused the increasing demand for modern heating \_\_\_\_\_ of all types.
- \_\_\_\_\_ houses should be highly efficient in its use of energy.
- Users can send photos or videos from a smart device such as phones or computers to a \_\_\_\_\_ TV.
- We ate at a restaurant at the top of the biggest downtown \_\_\_\_\_.
- We want to \_\_\_\_\_ the classrooms with the latest computer and projector.
- That beautiful bungalow is the \_\_\_\_\_ for a film about country life.

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given at the end of the sentence.**

- Last night our neighbourhood lost \_\_\_\_\_ due to the storm. ELECTRIC
- Future houses will use \_\_\_\_\_ energy for heating and cooking. SUN
- Do you know the of \_\_\_\_\_ the Royal Palace? LOCATE
- \_\_\_\_\_ machines make our life more and more comfortable. AUTOMATE
- I would like to live in a house with \_\_\_\_\_ design. FUTURE

6. We can use virtual \_\_\_\_\_ like Siri or Alexa to control our smart house. ASSIST
7. The lighting in smart houses is fully \_\_\_\_\_ and you can adjust the brightness of different rooms. CUSTOMISE
8. Technological \_\_\_\_\_ allow us to live conveniently. DEVELOP
9. My future house will be located on an island, \_\_\_\_\_ by the sea. SURROUND
10. They sell a wide range of electrical \_\_\_\_\_ such as washing machines and dishwashers. APPLY

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct groups.**

breath <u>e</u>	worth <u>y</u>	throug <u>h</u>	feath <u>e</u> r	sooth <u>e</u>	bat <u>h</u> e
theor <u>y</u>	path <u>h</u>	theatr <u>e</u>	youth <u>h</u>	author	thick
th <u>i</u> nk	south <u>e</u> rn	weath <u>e</u> r	thoroug <u>h</u>	earth <u>h</u>	further
togeth <u>er</u>	Neth <u>e</u> rlands	smooth <u>h</u>	th <u>e</u> me	therap <u>y</u>	width <u>h</u>
/θ/			/ð/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. anyth <u>ing</u>	B. north <u>h</u>	C. thes <u>e</u>	D. theor <u>y</u>
2. A. weath <u>er</u>	B. gath <u>e</u> r	C. meth <u>o</u> d	D. th <u>o</u>
3. A. four <u>th</u>	B. path <u>h</u>	C. birth <u>h</u>	D. th <u>u</u> s
4. A. with <u>i</u> n	B. ruth <u>l</u> ess	C. thro <u>at</u>	D. sixth
5. A. th <u>e</u> me	B. th <u>e</u> re	C. godfath <u>e</u> r	D. eith <u>e</u> r
6. A. width <u>h</u>	B. th <u>e</u> sis	C. th <u>o</u> ugh	D. eth <u>i</u> cal
7. A. smooth <u>e</u> n	B. heath <u>h</u>	C. lat <u>h</u> e	D. furth <u>e</u> rmore
8. A. oth <u>e</u> rwise	B. smooth <u>h</u>	C. rat <u>h</u> er	D. synth <u>e</u> sis
9. A. both <u>e</u> r	B. th <u>re</u> aten	C. auth <u>e</u> ntic	D. th <u>i</u> ef
10. A. rhyth <u>m</u>	B. th <u>r</u> ust	C. th <u>e</u> re	D. moth <u>e</u> rboard

**Exercise 3: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. unlucky	B. disagree	C. illegal	D. illicit
2. A. image	B. immoral	C. immobile	D. immune

3. A. impaired	B. impart	C. impatient	D. implement
4. A. inactive	B. enrich	C. include	D. income
5. A. unable	B. unafraid	C. unaware	D. unconvincing
6. A. uncertain	B. uncommon	C. uncountable	D. undecided
7. A. incomplete	B. unconcerned	C. unconfined	D. uncultured
8. A. undercooked	B. undamaged	C. undelete	D. undeniable
9. A. uncomfortable	B. irrelevant	C. inexpensive	D. irrational
10. A. inauthentic	B. A. irregular	C. irresponsible	D. inattention

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Choose the best answer to complete the following sentences.**

1. You have been working hard all day. You (*must/ will/ could*) be very tired now.
2. In the future, people (*might/ must/ would*) live in houses powered by solar energy.
3. It is a pity that Mary (*can't/shouldn't/mustn't*) go to the movie theatre with us.
4. Travelling by car is so expensive these days. I (*might/ can/ will*) as well go to work by bus.
5. (*Shall/Might/Must*) we repaint our fence this weekend? I think it's a good idea.
6. You (*might/should/must*) come or you can stay at home. It's up to you.
7. The task (*might/ must/ need*) be finished before 2 p.m. tomorrow or you will be punished.
8. Joe (*might/ will/have to*) win the first prize in this singing contest, but I'm not sure.
9. (*May/ Shall/Should*) I ask you a favour? Could you help me with this assignment?
10. John, (*may/will/shall*) you come to my party this weekend?

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct modal verb (*should, might, can, must*) and the verb given.**

1. Our plan failed this time, but I think it (work) \_\_\_\_\_ eventually.
2. Peter is very intelligent. He (solve) \_\_\_\_\_ these complicated math problems quickly.
3. Is that John? It (not/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ John. He is studying abroad and won't come back before December.
4. You (not/ walk) \_\_\_\_\_ on the grass because it is against the rules of the park.
5. Tina, you look pale and tired. You (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a rest.
6. Simon, you haven't eaten anything since yesterday. You (be) \_\_\_\_\_ really hungry now.

7. Will Ms. Brown be in charge of our class next year? I'm not sure. She (continue) \_\_\_\_\_ teaching us or work with another class.

8. In my imagination, the future house (contain) \_\_\_\_\_ smart devices which can be controlled by voice.

9. She is seven years old but she (not/ read) \_\_\_\_\_ yet.

10. Why is Mary looking around the classroom? She (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for her notebook.

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the verb given and *will*, *won't* or the question form.**

1. I enjoy spending my time here. I (probably/ return) \_\_\_\_\_ to this resort next year.

2. Will you come to Justin's birthday party tonight? I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a date with Angela in about an hour, so I can't come.

3. What do you think the weather (be) \_\_\_\_\_ like tomorrow?

4. Someone is knocking the door. I (check) \_\_\_\_\_ who that is.

5. If we get stuck in the traffic, we (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ at the station on time.

6. Oh, I am late, but I promise this (happen) \_\_\_\_\_ again in the future.

7. Liam hopes that he (own) \_\_\_\_\_ a large and modern house in the future.

8. Unless you pay more attention to the lesson, you (understand) \_\_\_\_\_ anything.

9. When (you/ give up) \_\_\_\_\_ this job and find a new one?

10. Whenever I meet Ms. Brown, she (give) \_\_\_\_\_ me a hug and some cookies.

**Exercise 4: Provide the correct form of the verb given (*future simple*, *present simple* and *be going to*).**

1. I imagine my future house (be) \_\_\_\_\_ surrounded by nature rather than buildings.

2. Do you know that Jane has fallen ill recently? Really, I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ her tomorrow.

3. I really hope the weather (be) \_\_\_\_\_ fine tomorrow.

4. The train (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ early at 6 a.m. tomorrow so don't be late.

5. The sky is clear, so I don't think it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.

6. They (possibly/ construct) \_\_\_\_\_ a bridge across this river to make transportation easier.

7. We have to hurry. The ferry (depart) \_\_\_\_\_ in fifteen minutes.

8. Jeremy, \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ go) camping with us this weekend?

9. Who do you think (win) \_\_\_\_\_ this competition?

10. They have decided that their wedding (take place) \_\_\_\_\_ at the local church.

11. I promise I (not/ come) \_\_\_\_\_ to class late again.

12. Probably the President (not/ deliver) \_\_\_\_\_ the opening speech this morning.

13. When the spring (come) \_\_\_\_\_, the Smiths will renovate their front garden.
14. My friend and I have made reservation at a seaside resort. We (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ our summer vacation there.
15. Once they have finished decorating the room, the party (begin) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 5: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. You had better listen to what the doctor says. SHOULD  
→ You
2. If I were you, I would apply to that university. SHOULD  
→ I think
3. May I use your phone to contact my family? MIND  
→ Would
4. Could you please keep quiet for a while? MIND  
→ Would
5. You are not allowed to make noise during the examination. MUST  
→ You
6. They will expect you to wear smartly during the interview. HAVE  
→ You
7. Peter will arrive at the airport. Right after that he will call you. SOON  
→ Peter
8. I will complete my homework, then I will send it to my instructor. HAVE  
→ Once
9. Probably we will buy a bungalow and spend our retirement there. MIGHT  
→ We
10. Perhaps the manager is in his office now. MIGHT  
→ The

**C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP**

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. r <u>o</u> bot	B. c <u>o</u> nnect	C. c <u>o</u> exist	D. r <u>o</u> le
2. A. p <u>o</u> gramme	B. c <u>o</u> ntact	C. p <u>o</u> duct	D. c <u>o</u> mplex
3. A. f <u>u</u> rther	B. br <u>ea</u> th	C. sunb <u>a</u> thing	D. <u>th</u> ough

4. A. house <u>bo</u> at	B. privatis <u>e</u>	C. decreas <u>e</u>	D. ceas <u>e</u>
5. A. palac <u>e</u>	B. necklac <u>e</u>	C. birthplac <u>e</u>	D. solac <u>e</u>

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. dishwasher	B. housework	C. order	D. suppose
2. A. invite	B. equip	C. locate	D. maintain
3. A. wireless	B. receive	C. surround	D. allow
4. A. appliance	B. energy	C. arrival	D. surroundings
5. A. automatic	B. examination	C. economic	D. biology

**Exercise 3: Choose the best answer.**

- The washing machine and dryer will take good \_\_\_\_\_ our clothes.  
A. care to                      B. care of                      C. look at                      D. look after
- Wireless TV can be connected to a PC or laptop to \_\_\_\_\_ photos, music, or videos.  
A. receive                      B. respond                      C. convey                      D. present
- Modern appliances in the future house will make housework less \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. time-saving                      B. time-consuming                      C. comfortable                      D. convenient
- I think future vehicles will run \_\_\_\_\_ alternative energy such as solar power.  
A. on                      B. in                      C. by                      D. at
- Future robots will have the ability \_\_\_\_\_ us in many aspects of life.  
A. to help                      B. help                      C. helping                      D. helped
- In the future, we might have our meals \_\_\_\_\_ by robots.  
A. cook                      B. cooked                      C. to cook                      D. cooking
- Some people predict that we \_\_\_\_\_ spend our holiday on the Moon or Mars in the future.  
A. might                      B. should                      C. must                      D. have to
- With the rapid development of technology, I think many household chores can be done \_\_\_\_\_ by machines.  
A. automated                      B. automatic                      C. automatically                      D. automation
- My future house will be surrounded \_\_\_\_\_ flowers and trees as I love nature.  
A. by                      B. under                      C. in                      D. with
- Where is Mary? I'm not sure. She \_\_\_\_\_ in her room.  
A. might sleep                      B. might be sleeping                      C. must be sleeping                      D. must sleep

**Exercise 4: Fill in the blank with correct form of the verb given.**

<i>do</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>send</i>	<i>surf</i>	<i>water</i>	<i>wash</i>	<i>cook</i>	<i>clean</i>
-----------	-------------	-------------	-------------	--------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

- \_\_\_\_\_ the windows can take a lot of time so I need some help from machines.
- Do you think modern fridge \_\_\_\_\_ our fruits besides keeping them fresh?
- I hope my future house will have modern facilities that \_\_\_\_\_ the bed for me.
- Do you think robots can \_\_\_\_\_ meals as well as a chef?
- In the future, humans will let automatic dishwasher \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes.
- Modern technology allows us to \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet using smart devices such as phones or smart watches.
- I really need a robot assistant that helps me \_\_\_\_\_ my house plant regularly.
- We now can \_\_\_\_\_ voice chat to our friends and relatives instead of text messages.

**Exercise 5: Complete the sentences below using: *might, might not, must, mustn't, can, can't*.**

- Don't stay up too late before the examination. You \_\_\_\_\_ perform well if you feel tired.
- You really \_\_\_\_\_ put more effort in your work or you will get fired from your job.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ be serious when you propose that idea. That is ridiculous.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you help me with this task? It's hard to do it without your support.
- The lecturer hasn't recovered from illness yet. She \_\_\_\_\_ deliver the lecture tomorrow.
- Students \_\_\_\_\_ cheat in the exam. Otherwise, they will be heavily punished.
- Tomlinson is an excellent student. He \_\_\_\_\_ do well in both academic subjects and extra-curricular activities.
- It hasn't been decided yet but we \_\_\_\_\_ spend our retirement in the countryside.

**Exercise 6: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given.**

- I hope my future house will be located in pleasant \_\_\_\_\_. SURROUND
- Is this your dream to live in a \_\_\_\_\_ penthouse? LUXURY
- Mr. Smith is planning to buy some new household \_\_\_\_\_. APPLY
- Scientists and architectures are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ our house. MODERN
- \_\_\_\_\_ chargers help us to reduce the number of cables. WIRE
- Our life used to be \_\_\_\_\_ due to the shortage of electricity. COMFORT
- What is the \_\_\_\_\_ between a palace and a castle? DIFFER
- We visited an \_\_\_\_\_ UFO-shaped house last week. USUAL

**Exercise 7: Put a tick (✓) at the beginning of the correct sentence. Put a cross (✗) if the sentence contains a mistake and correct it.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The weather forecast says that it is going to be cold and rainy all weekend.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ As soon as the night will fall, our party will begin.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Mary's got stuck in the traffic and she might arrive late.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Jane has bought some reference books. She will use them to revise for the exam.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Instead burning coal and oil, we can use solar or wind energy to power our future house.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I hope that my future house will be equipped with modem machines.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ These kids had better to stop climbing that tree because it is too dangerous.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Do you think the future house can take care for itself, like doing the cleaning automatically?

**Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete the following passage.**

Whenever we mention solar power, we often think of modern technology and the wave of the future. (1) \_\_\_\_\_, using solar energy can be cost-efficient, easy to set up, and more common (2) \_\_\_\_\_ you think: it's the thing of the present. Even if you can't invest in a solar electric system, there (3) \_\_\_\_\_ still some uses of solar energy that can help (4) \_\_\_\_\_ money and energy. For example, you can harness solar energy to heat water and it can be a reasonable alternative (5) \_\_\_\_\_ conventional gas or electric-powered models. In (6) \_\_\_\_\_, instead of electric light bulbs, you can use outdoor solar lights (7) \_\_\_\_\_ use solar cells to convert sunlight into electricity. In short, finding ways to maximize the solar power efficiency in your home is absolutely achievable, and there are solar units to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the needs of any homeowner.

1. A. Therefore	B. But	C. However	D. Because
2. A. than	B. that	C. when	D. though
3. A. is	B. are	C. have	D. has
4. A. save	B. to save	C. saving	D. Both A and B
5. A. for	B. at	C. about	D. to
6. A. short	B. addition	C. consequence	D. result
7. A. which	B. who	C. what	D. where
8. A. get	B. meet	C. talk	D. have

**Exercise 9: Read the following passage and answer the questions.**

**Preparing for A New World: Building Homes in the Age of Climate Change**

All housing needs to meet the demands of the new world. There are two important ways that these demands will change what our homes look like.

**Environmental efficiency: Homes have to become greener**

If we're going to do anything to stop or slow the effects of climate change, our houses are going to have to work harder to reduce energy expenditure. Tesla has been hard at work on their solar roofs for a while now, and we're expecting this technology to become more commonplace soon. More sleekly designed than solar panels of the past, these tiles can power your entire house. And while the technology itself costs a pretty penny, once installed, they're actually less expensive than most people's monthly electricity bill.

**Resistance to extreme weather: Homes have to deal with unpredictable storms**

Houses of the future are going to need to withstand more weather, no matter where they're located. While we can't know what the future will bring, we do know that more moisture in the air will lead to more storms. So we have to raise the standard for what we deem acceptable when we say "up to code." Expect to see fire-proof and earthquake-proof bunkers included in home listings. At the very least, you should see flood and storm insurance rates increase. That's the cost of living in the future.

1. According to the second paragraph, what will future house need to do to slow the effects of climate change?

---

2. What technology has Tesla been working on?

---

3. Is the installation cost of solar roofs high?

---

4. What are the second change to the future home that is mentioned in the passage?

---

5. What are the examples of disasters mentioned in the third paragraph?

---

6. What is mentioned as the cost of living in the future?

---

**Exercise 10: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. Jim has the ability to compose music and sing well. CAN

→ Jim

2. It says here that we should submit the assignment before June 6<sup>th</sup>. SUPPOSED

→ It says here that we are

3. I have an important test tomorrow, so I ought to leave now. BECAUSE

→ I had

4. You are required to take off your shoes before entering any Japanese household. MUST

→ You

5. I had to present my ideas clearly so my peers could understand. NECESSARY

→ It

6. It is forbidden to take photos in the museum. ALLOWED

→ You

7. It will be better for you to do your homework by yourself. RATHER

→ I would

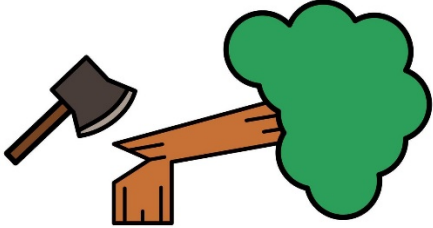

8. We might not find it easy to complete our project in two days. COULD

→ It

# UNIT 11: OUR GREENER WORLD

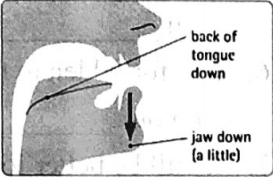
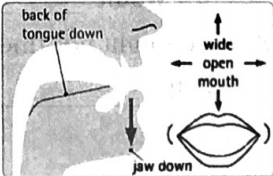
## A – TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

### I. Từ vựng

	
<p>deforestation</p> <p>contamination</p> <p>pollution</p> <p>soil erosion</p> <p>climate change</p> <p>resource depletion</p>	<p>reforestation</p> <p>reduce - reuse - recycle</p> <p>environmentally-friendly</p> <p>renewable energy</p> <p>sustainable</p> <p>charity</p>

### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Phát âm: /ɑ:/ vs. /æ/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Mô tả	Môi	Lưỡi	Minh họa
/ɑ:/	Dài	Âm “a” kéo dài, âm phát ra trong khoảng miệng	Miệng mở rộng	Lưỡi hạ thấp	
/æ/	Ngắn	Âm a bẹt, hơi lai giữa âm “a” và “e”, cảm giác âm bị đè xuống	Miệng mở rộng, môi dưới hạ thấp xuống	Lưỡi được hạ rất thấp	

• Âm /æ/ có thể được nhận diện bằng chữ cái *a*.

back	camera	factory	jam	manager
------	--------	---------	-----	---------

- Âm /ɑː/ có thể được nhận diện bằng chữ cái *a* hoặc *ar*.

a	ask	answer	bathroom	class	dance
ar	bar	car	card	park	start

## 2. Trọng âm của tính từ ghép

- Nếu là tính từ được hình thành bằng cặp trạng từ-tính từ (ill-prepared), hoặc tính từ-tính từ (old-fashioned), trọng âm chính sẽ rơi vào (trọng âm của) từ đứng sau.
- Nếu là tính từ được hình thành bằng cặp danh từ-tính từ (car-sick) trọng âm sẽ rơi vào âm tiết đứng trước.

homesick	waterproof	old-fashioned	ill-prepared
/ˈhəʊmsɪk/	/ˈwɔːtəpruːf/	/ˌəʊld ˈfæʃnd/	/ˌɪl prɪˈpeəd/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Conditional sentences - Type 1 (Câu điều kiện loại 1)

#### a. Cách dùng

- Câu điều kiện loại 1 được sử dụng để diễn tả một hành động có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai nếu một điều kiện nào đó được thỏa mãn.
- Câu điều kiện gồm có hai phần: mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện (if clause) và mệnh đề chỉ kết quả (result clause).

Ví dụ: *If the weather is fine, I will go camping with my friends tomorrow.*

(If clause)

(Result clause)

- Mệnh đề điều kiện và mệnh đề kết quả có thể đứng trước hay sau đều được.

→ I will go camping with my friends tomorrow if the weather is fine.

#### b. Cấu trúc

**If + S + V<sub>(present simple)</sub>, S + will + V<sub>(bare infinitive)</sub>**

Ví dụ:

If I have enough money, I will buy a new computer.

If she works hard, she will make a lot of money.

**Lưu ý:**

- Có thể dùng các động từ khuyết thiếu **must, can, may, should** thay cho will trong mệnh đề chính.

*If it **rains** heavily, you **can** stay here*

*If they **want** to see that film, they **must** buy tickets in advance.*

- Trong mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện, việc sử dụng các thì động từ ở hiện tại khác là có thể, không phải chỉ có thể sử dụng hiện tại đơn.

*If you 're driving, I'll come with you.*

*If I've seen the film before, I'll let you know.*

2. *If* alternative (các cấu trúc tương đương thay thế cho *if*)

• **Unless S + V<sub>(present simple)</sub> = If S + don't/doesn't + V<sub>(bare infinitive)</sub>**

We'll go out for a walk *if it does not rain*.

= We'll go out for a walk *unless it rains*.

• **otherwise** (nếu không thì) được sử dụng cùng mệnh đề kết quả

You should fix your air conditioner, *otherwise you will waste* a lot of energy.

= *If you do not fix* your air conditioner, you will waste a lot of energy.

= *Unless you fix* your air conditioner, you will waste a lot of energy.

• **in case, provided/providing (that) và as/so long as** có thể được sử dụng để thay thế cho *if* sử dụng để nói về điều kiện

*Provided you leave now*, you'll catch the train. (= If you leave now)

I will lend you some money *as long as you promise* to pay it back. (= if you promise to pay it back)

Take a coat with you *in case the weather gets* worse.

• **should** khi được sử dụng để thay thế cho *if* mang nghĩa liệu có khi nào (by any chance) khiến hành động trong mệnh đề điều kiện trở nên ít khả năng xảy hơn. Vì theo sau động từ khuyết thiếu *should* nên động từ giữ nguyên thể, không chia theo hiện tại đơn.

*Should you see* John, can you give him a message?

*Should Mark* Heed help, he will tell you.

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Describe the following pictures using the letters given at the beginning.**



1. \_\_\_\_\_



2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given at the end of the sentence.**

1. Planting more trees is one of the many ways to solve the problem of soil \_\_\_\_\_. ERODE

2. \_\_\_\_\_ is not the problem of any one person or nation but a global issue. POLLUTE

3. You should bring \_\_\_\_\_ bags with you when you go to the supermarket. REUSE

4. I'm thinking of \_\_\_\_\_ all the paper bags I get from grocery shopping. RECYCLE

5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the act of planting trees on an area of land that has become empty or spoiled.

FOREST

6. The website encourages \_\_\_\_\_ fashion through swapping. SUSTAIN

7. Industrial zones might be good for the economy, but it causes environmental \_\_\_\_\_.

CONTAMINATE

8. To Lich River has been heavily \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time. POLLUTE

9. \_\_\_\_\_ resources are not infinite, and we should exploit them sustainably. NATURE

10. There is nothing much a person can do to prevent resource \_\_\_\_\_. DEplete

**Exercise 3: Choose the correct answer A, B, c, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.**

Plastic (1) \_\_\_\_\_ one of the highest produced materials — and the least recycled. In 2018, only 8.6% of plastic created was recycled. With everything from your shampoo (2) \_\_\_\_\_ your bag of lettuce being wrapped in plastic, it might seem (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to avoid it. But there are a number of ways to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of plastic that you use on a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ basis.

Switch to a shopping bag that you can reuse over and over again. Reusable bags made from cotton, hemp, or burlap are the best choices, as they're more easily up-cycled or recycled when their lifetime of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ your groceries is over.

Instead of heading to the mall to buy new (7) \_\_\_\_\_, consider looking first in a thrift store or vintage shop, or (8) \_\_\_\_\_ clothes with friends. You can breathe new life into your wardrobe without wasting the precious resources needed to produce new clothing.

1. A. am	B. is	C. are	D. be
2. A. in	B. on	C. of	D. to
3. A. impossible	B. incredible	C. inedible	D. important
4. A. reduce	B. reduced	C. reducing	D. reduces
5. A. regulate	B. regulation	C. regular	D. regularise
6. A. making	B. reusing	C. recycling	D. carrying
7. A. cloths	B. clothes	C. clothings	D. clothed
8. A. swapping	B. changing	C. buying	D. using

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Put the words in the correct groups.**

ap <u>ar</u> tment	h <u>ea</u> rt	j <u>az</u> z	ar <u>my</u>	ma <u>tch</u>	la <u>ck</u>
ar <u>t</u> icle	pa <u>ck</u>	Ma <u>rch</u>	ar <u>t</u> ist	lan <u>te</u> rn	na <u>t</u> ural
ga <u>r</u> den	ga <u>ra</u> ge	ma <u>n</u>	pa <u>l</u> ace	sta <u>t</u> ute	guita <u>r</u>
ma <u>tt</u> er	wa <u>tch</u>	pra <u>ct</u> ice	da <u>r</u> k	ba <u>nd</u>	spa <u>a</u>

/ɑ:/			/æ/		

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. am <u>a</u> zing	B. st <u>a</u> y	C. n <u>a</u> ture	D. l <u>a</u> ntern
2. A. star <u>v</u> e	B. r <u>a</u> pid	C. <u>a</u> rticle	D. st <u>a</u> rdom
3. A. gal <u>a</u> xy	B. <u>a</u> nswer	C. <u>a</u> void	D. <u>a</u> mazing
4. A. gar <u>a</u> ge	B. m <u>a</u> n	C. st <u>a</u> nd	D. pr <u>a</u> ctice
5. A. mass <u>a</u> ge	B. M <u>a</u> rch	C. g <u>a</u> rden	D. m <u>a</u> tt <u>a</u> ter
6. A. <u>a</u> llow	B. dat <u>a</u>	C. inst <u>a</u> ll	D. liter <u>a</u> cy
7. A. sc <u>a</u> re	B. dr <u>a</u> ft	C. pl <u>a</u> nt	D. sc <u>a</u> rf
8. A. ch <u>a</u> t	B. d <u>a</u> d	C. gr <u>a</u> ph	D. b <u>a</u> ckpack
9. A. st <u>a</u> y	B. stat <u>i</u> on	C. m <u>a</u> id	D. gr <u>a</u> duate
10. A. b <u>a</u> lm	B. m <u>a</u> nual	C. saf <u>a</u> ri	D. p <u>a</u> lm

**Exercise 3: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. homesick	B. carsick	C. ill-prepared	D. waterproof
2. A. old-fashioned	B. good-looking	C. magnificent	D. easy-going
3. A. never-ending	B. quick-witted	C. level-headed	D. open-minded
4. A. narrow-minded	B. absent-minded	C. bed-ridden	D. middle-aged
5. A. underestimate	B. well-known	C. fast-faced	D. long-term
6. A. sun-dried	B. blue-collar	C. short-term	D. part-time
7. A. airtight	B. eye-opening	C. mouth-watering	D. second-hand
8. A. record-breaking	B. heart-warming	C. overstaffed	D. sleepyhead
9. A. brand-new	B. undercooked	C. old-fashioned	D. well-known
10. A. long-lasting	B. cold-blooded	C. decision-making	D. international

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Choose the most suitable verb forms in each sentence.**

1. The environment *will be/ is/ are* greener if every person *will take/ takes/ take* actions to protect it.

2. I hope you *get/ will get/ are getting* a promotion because you *work/ worked/ have worked* so hard for a long time.
3. If more trees *will be planted/ are planted/ are going to be planted*, we might *reduce/ reducing/ reduced* air pollution.
4. You *get/ are getting/ will get* good marks if you *studied/ study/ will study* harder.
5. It is so cloudy today. Take an umbrella with you in case it *rains/ will rain/ is raining*.
6. She *calls / call/ will call* you if she *is needing/ needs/ will need* any help.
7. Unless Mark *will finish/ finishes/ is finishing*, he *can't go/ goes/ will go* out and play.
8. If people *see/ will see/ seeing* a red light, they have to *stop/ stopping/ will stop*.
9. Do not climb that tree! If you *fall/ falls/ will fall*. I *am not/ will not be/ will being* able to catch you.
10. Get me a cup of coffee, and Mark *gives/ giving/ will give* you the money later.

**Exercise 2: Complete the following sentences with the suitable form of each verb in bracket.**

- A: I think I (1. leave) \_\_\_\_\_ my lighter at your house. Have you seen it? B: No, but I (2. look) \_\_\_\_\_ for it. If I (3. find) \_\_\_\_\_ it, I (4. give) \_\_\_\_\_ it back to you.
- If Mark (5. have) \_\_\_\_\_ time tonight, he (6. finish) \_\_\_\_\_ the book that he (7. read) \_\_\_\_\_.
- If she (8. drive) \_\_\_\_\_ all that way since this morning, she (9. be) \_\_\_\_\_ tired and hungry when she (10. arrive) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 3: Complete the following sentences with the suitable form of each verb in bracket.**

1. If you (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ reading that book, can I borrow it?
2. If you (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a job, you can always call Peter. He (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a new accountant for months.
3. I (come) \_\_\_\_\_ and give a hand if Sam (need) \_\_\_\_\_ help to move his stuff.
4. Don't worry, you (just / catch) \_\_\_\_\_ a cold. If you (take) \_\_\_\_\_ an aspirin, you (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ better.
5. Brutus is a very friendly dog. If anyone (touch) \_\_\_\_\_ him, he (not bite) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. If the kids (enjoy) \_\_\_\_\_ themselves, we can take them home one or two hours later than usual.

7. Should he (get) \_\_\_\_\_ the job, we (have) a party.
8. XOX (have) \_\_\_\_\_ to cancel the show unless the band (sell) more tickets.
9. XOX (already / sell out) \_\_\_\_\_ tickets to the band's world tours, so they (expect) \_\_\_\_\_ a full house for each location.
10. We'll go to the coast tomorrow unless it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.
11. We will stay at home in case our new furniture (be) \_\_\_\_\_ delivered.
12. Should your child (become) \_\_\_\_\_ nervous about any activity, it is a good idea to inform the team-leader.
13. Mark can play in the living room as long as he (not make) \_\_\_\_\_ a mess.
14. People may (do) \_\_\_\_\_ whatever they like provided that it is within the law.
15. If they (get) \_\_\_\_\_ married in October, when (they / send) \_\_\_\_\_ the invitations?

**Exercise 4: Complete the following sentences using *as long as*, *unless*, *otherwise*, *in case*, or *should*.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you pay now, we can't guarantee you a ticket.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Mark need your help, he will let you know.
3. We are very happy for you to stay at our house \_\_\_\_\_ you like.
4. I'll remember that film \_\_\_\_\_ I live.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ it rains, we'll go for a picnic by the river tomorrow.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I forget later, I will give you the keys to the garage now.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you feel hungry, I can buy you a sandwich on my way home.
8. You can borrow the car \_\_\_\_\_ you don't drive too fast.
9. Let's take our swimming costumes \_\_\_\_\_ there's a pool at the hotel.
10. They won't come \_\_\_\_\_ you invite them.
11. Can you turn the radio off \_\_\_\_\_ you're listening to it?
12. You should send the letter now, \_\_\_\_\_ Mark won't receive it before Monday.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ you need more information, you can contact me at any time.
14. You can have my camera \_\_\_\_\_ you lend me your iPad.
15. Students have to study hard, \_\_\_\_\_ they will get bad marks.

**Exercise 5: Rewrite each sentence, using *unless* or *if*. Do not change the meaning.**

1. You will be sick if you don't stop eating.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

2. You will be seriously ill unless you stop smoking.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. I won't pay if you don't provide the goods immediately.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. If you don't study hard, you'll never understand any subject.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

5. Please don't call me unless you have an urgent problem.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

6. Unless we pass the driving test, we cannot have driving license.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

7. I will return to school soon unless there is a traffic jam.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

8. You will fail the test if you do not study hard.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

9. Unless you go to sleep soon, you will be very tired.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

10. If you don't return this book to the library today, you'll have to pay a fine.

→ \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 6: Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown. Do not change the meaning.**

1. I'll call the police if you don't leave me alone!

→ Unless \_\_\_\_\_.

2. In the snowy weather we don't go to school.

→ If \_\_\_\_\_.

3. If you see Peter, tell him to be here at 8.00.

→ Should \_\_\_\_\_.

4. We won't go away if the weather is bad.

→ Unless \_\_\_\_\_.

5. If you hurry up, you won't be late.

→ \_\_\_\_\_, otherwise \_\_\_\_\_.

6. I'll lend you the money on condition that you pay it back next week.

→ As long as \_\_\_\_\_.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. gar <u>a</u> ge	B. pa <u>l</u> m	C. la <u>n</u> tern	D. wa <u>t</u> ch
2. A. <u>u</u> nderstand	B. <u>u</u> niversity	C. bu <u>t</u>	D. mu <u>ch</u>
3. A. compa <u>n</u> y	B. litera <u>c</u> y	C. sa <u>f</u> ari	D. internat <u>i</u> onal
4. A. sa <u>c</u> red	B. rap <u>i</u> d	C. ra <u>n</u> dom	D. nat <u>u</u> ral
5. A. la <u>w</u>	B. wa <u>k</u> e	C. insta <u>l</u> l	D. ta <u>k</u> l

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. old-fashioned	B. education	C. understand	D. level-headed
2. A. sleepyhead	B. international	C. never-ending	D. ill-prepared
3. A. communicate	B. charity	C. acknowledge	D. deforest
4. A. contaminate	B. renewable	C. recycle	D. homesick
5. A. erosion	B. resource	C. airtight	D. sustainable

**Exercise 3: Complete the following sentences using *as long as*, *unless*, *otherwise*, or *in case*.**

- Take the spare key \_\_\_\_\_ I am still out when you get back.
- Peter won't call \_\_\_\_\_ you ask him to.
- Maria won't speak to you \_\_\_\_\_ you apologise for what you did.
- The batteries won't last long \_\_\_\_\_ you charge them properly.
- I'll lend you the money \_\_\_\_\_ you pay me back next month.
- Don't forget to keep the receipt \_\_\_\_\_ you need it later.
- You can stay in the waiting \_\_\_\_\_ you keep quiet.
- I'll tell you what really happened \_\_\_\_\_ you keep the secret.
- I'll take you to the show \_\_\_\_\_ you finish your homework in time.
- I need to get more experience, \_\_\_\_\_ I can't find a better job.
- The child can come in \_\_\_\_\_ she doesn't touch anything.
- \_\_\_\_\_ you have a key, you cannot enter this room.
- Everybody will trust you \_\_\_\_\_ you keep your promise.
- She brings a pen and notebook \_\_\_\_\_ she needs them.
- I think you should leave home early \_\_\_\_\_ there is too much traffic.
- You need to get permission from the teacher, \_\_\_\_\_ you cannot leave school.

17. Tell me you will go to Mark's party, \_\_\_\_\_ I won't go.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ you have enough money, you can buy anything you want.
19. I will put on my sun cream \_\_\_\_\_ it's sunny outside.
20. You have to finish your homework, \_\_\_\_\_ won't let you play video games.

**Exercise 4: Give the correct form or tense of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. If I meet him tomorrow, I (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ him the truth.
2. The last time I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ Mark was two weeks ago.
3. I (not see) \_\_\_\_\_ Mark since he moved to Manchester.
4. She (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a birthday cake for her son in the kitchen.
5. We (waste) \_\_\_\_\_ too much power at the moment.
6. When the phone rang, I (water) \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers in the garden.
7. You should practice (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ English every day.
8. His doctor advised him (do) \_\_\_\_\_ more physical exercises.

**Exercise 5: Choose the correct answer for each of the gaps to complete the text.**

Nowadays humans are (1) \_\_\_\_\_ more and more rubbish. The (2) \_\_\_\_\_ of waste we produce has increased. This problem is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ result of our consumer culture. Advertisers (4) \_\_\_\_\_ us to buy the newest fashions. If something breaks, we throw it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ and buy a new one. Products are not made to last. The amount of (6) \_\_\_\_\_ waste is growing because most foods are sold in non-biodegradable plastic (7) \_\_\_\_\_. This waste ends up in landfill sites. People do not think (8) \_\_\_\_\_ the consequences of dropping rubbish. They assume that somebody is responsible (9) \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning the streets, but they do not know who this somebody is. Consumers should avoid buying over-packaged products. We should recycle and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ useful materials. Households can use several rubbish bins to separate waste. Recycling saves energy and raw materials. We should recycle as much as possible.

1. A. producing	B. produce	C. produced	D. to produce
2. A. lot	B. summary	C. number	D. amount
3. A. ✗	B. the	C. a	D. an
4. A. encourage	B. encourages	C. encouraged	D. to encourage
5. A. in	B. on	C. around	D. away
6. A. homework	B. household	C. chores	D. housing

7. A. pack	B. packing	C. packaging	D. package
8. A. about	B. on	C. in	D. at
9. A. of	B. for	C. about	D. over
10. A. reduce	B. recover	C. reuse	D. remain

**Exercise 6: Complete each sentence using the given words.**

1. He / leave / supermarket / without / buy / anything.

---

2. I / remembered / turn off / lights / before / leave.

---

3. She / keen / tennis player.

---

4. The doctor / advise / him / give up / smoke.

---

5. I / regret / not / go / the airport / say / good-bye / him.

---

6. She / prefer / stay / home / to / go / cinema.

---

7. John / encourage / me / apply / that job.

---

8. Mary / interested / collect / dolls / foreign countries.

---

9. I / really / look / forward / go / to the theatre tomorrow.

---

10. I / enjoy / cook / for / children / Sunday.

---

**Exercise 7: Read the passage and answer the following questions.**

**Problems Caused by Deforestation**

Trees and other green plants produce oxygen, the gas needed by humans and other animals to live.

When trees are cut down, less oxygen is released into the atmosphere.

Trees also capture carbon dioxide, one of the gases that contribute to a problem known as global warming. When they are burned, trees release carbon dioxide back into the atmosphere.

## ***Erosion***

Deforestation on steep mountain hillsides can lead to erosion. The land can get worn away because the trees are not there to hold the soil together. Heavy rains in such areas can wash the land down the slopes in disastrous landslides that destroy fields, homes, and human lives.

## ***Habitat Loss***

Many forests are peaceful, quiet places where people can rest or play. When trees are cut down, this recreational use of forests is lost.

Forests are home to an enormous range of living things. When an area is deforested, many plants and animals are killed. Others lose their habitats. Some types of living things become extinct because of deforestation, especially those that live in tropical rainforests. The traditional way of life for rainforest peoples can be greatly affected by deforestation.

(Source: <https://kids.britannica.com/>)

1. Which type of gas is necessary for humans and other animals to live?

---

2. When do trees emit carbon dioxide back into the atmosphere?

---

3. What are the two main consequences of forest destruction mentioned in the passage?

---

4. What can be the disastrous effects of landslides?

---

5. Why can deforestation lead to animal extinction?

---

**Exercise 8: Rewrite the following sentences so that the meaning does not change.**

1. Can you explain this terminology to me, please?

→ What does

2. You can trust me to finish the report on time.

→ I promise

3. I haven't been to Portugal since 1960.

→ I last

4. That's the most interesting story I've ever heard.

→ I have never

5. What is the price of that stunning dress?

→ How

6. When did you buy your computer?

→ How long have

7. If people don't work hard, they will not succeed in life.

→ Unless

8. Get up now or you'll be late for school.

→ If

9. Mark is a good table tennis player.

→ Mark is good


10. It takes me about two hours each day to do my homework.

→ I spend

# UNIT 12: OUR GREENER WORLD

## A – TRỌNG TÂM KIẾN THỨC

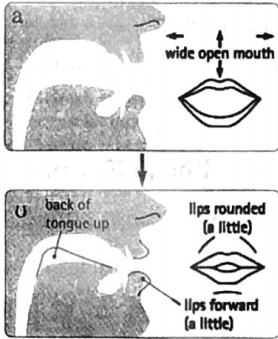
### I. Từ vựng

<b>Types of robots</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- home robot</li><li>- worker robot</li><li>- teaching robot</li><li>- doctor robot</li><li>- rescue robot</li><li>- construction robot</li><li>- space robot</li></ul>							
<b>Functions of robots</b>							
guard the house	recognize our faces	do the heavy thing	work in hazardous environments	control vehicles	deliver orders	synthesize speech	diagnose diseases

### II. Ngữ âm

#### 1. Phát âm: /ɔɪ/ vs. /aʊ/

Âm	Độ dài hơi	Mô tả	Môi	Lưỡi	Minh họa
/ɔɪ/	Dài	Đọc âm /ɔ/ rồi chuyển dần sang âm /ɪ/	Môi dẹt dần sang hai bên	Lưỡi nâng lên & đẩy dần ra phía trước	

/aʊ/	Dài	Đọc âm /a/ rồi chuyển dần sang âm /ʊ/	Môi tròn dần	Lưỡi hơi thụt dần về phía sau	
------	-----	---------------------------------------	--------------	-------------------------------	---

• Âm /ɔɪ/ có thể được nhận diện bằng nhóm chữ cái oi hoặc oy.

oi	coin	point	voice
oy	boy	enjoy	toy

• Âm /aʊ/ có thể được nhận diện bằng nhóm chữ cái ow hoặc ou.

ow	how	now	vowel
ou	loud	mouth	sound

## 2. Trọng âm của danh từ ghép

Danh từ ghép thường có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết đầu.

paperknife	/'peɪpənəɪf/	schoolboy	/'sku:lɔɪ/
houseboat	/'haʊsbəʊt/	bookseller	/'bʊksələ/

## III. Ngữ pháp

### 1. Ôn tập động từ khuyết thiếu

Modals	used to describe possibility	used to guess or give suggestion	
		at present	in the past
must	You <b>must keep</b> it a secret. You <b>mustn't tell</b> anyone.	Louise <b>must get</b> very bored in her job. She does the same thing every day.	Someone <b>must have taken</b> my bag. I can't find it anywhere.
can (khả năng ở hiện tại)	I <b>can come and see</b> you tomorrow if you like.	They haven't lived here for very long. They <b>can't know</b> many people.	X
could (khả năng ở quá khứ)	We had a lovely room in the hotel. We <b>could</b> see the lake.	You <b>couldn't have met</b> Linda at the party. She was at my house all day.	You <b>could have left</b> your phone at work.
may/might	I haven't decided where to	Mark is absent from today	A: I can't find my phone

	go on holiday. I <b>may go</b> to London.	class. He <b>may be</b> ill.	anywhere.
	Take an umbrella with you. It <b>might rain</b> later.	She is not answering her phone. She <b>might be sleeping</b> .	B: You <b>might have left</b> it at work.

### • Phân biệt can/could và be able to

**can** thường được sử dụng để diễn tả khả năng có tính cố định của một đối tượng nào đó (như khả năng nghe, nhìn,...) ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai, còn trong quá khứ **could** sẽ được sử dụng, **be able to** thường được sử dụng để diễn tả khả năng hoàn thành hành động trong một tình huống nhất định. Đôi khi *can/could* cũng có thể được sử dụng để thay thế cho *be able to*.

*Tom can/will be able to come tomorrow.*

*My grandfather could speak five languages.*

*The fire spread quickly, but everybody was able to escape.*

*Mark was an excellent table-tennis player when he was younger. He could beat anybody.* (= anh ấy có khả năng, anh ấy đủ tốt để đánh bại bất kì ai)

*Johnny and Mark played a match yesterday. Mark played well, but Johnny was able to beat him.* (= Johnny đã thành công đánh bại Mark trong trận đấu hôm qua)

## 2. Các chức năng khác của động từ khuyết thiếu

- Dùng động từ khuyết thiếu trong câu yêu cầu/nhờ vả (requests)

*Can/Could you wait a moment, please?*

*Helen, can you do me a favour?*

*Excuse me, could you tell me how to get to the bus station?*

- Dùng động từ khuyết thiếu trong câu xin phép (permissions)

*Could I use your phone charger? = Do you mind if I use your phone charger?*

*Is it all right if I sit here?*

*Do you think I could borrow your bike?*

*May I ask you a question?*

- Dùng động từ khuyết thiếu trong lời mời hoặc đề nghị (invitations or offerings)

*Can I get you some coffee?*

*Would you like some coffee?*

## B - BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

### I. Từ vựng

**Exercise 1: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb given.**

<i>do</i>	<i>cut</i>	<i>take</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>lift</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>allow</i>	<i>get</i>
-----------	------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	-------------	--------------	------------

1. You had better \_\_\_\_\_ more notice of small details to ensure accuracy in your job.
2. With the help of machinery, we don't have to spend much time \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes.
3. Using robots at home \_\_\_\_\_ us to have more time to rest.
4. One day robots can help people to do the simplest things such as brushing teeth and \_\_\_\_\_ dressed.
5. I hate \_\_\_\_\_ the hedge but a home robot can help me with that.
6. Can we rely on a robot to \_\_\_\_\_ after our kids?
7. Worker robots have strong arms that can easily \_\_\_\_\_ heavy objects.
8. The availability of home robots \_\_\_\_\_ our life more and more convenient.

**Exercise 2: Fill in the blank with a suitable word from the box.**

<i>home</i>	<i>mining</i>	<i>space</i>	<i>robotic</i>	<i>constructio</i> <i>n</i>	<i>rescue</i>	<i>doctor</i>	<i>teacher</i>
-------------	---------------	--------------	----------------	--------------------------------	---------------	---------------	----------------

1. \_\_\_\_\_ robots can use cameras and other sensors to recognize different minerals.
2. Nowadays, \_\_\_\_\_ nurses can assist patients in moving around and delivering medicines.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ robots are being employed to explore the surface of Mar as well as other planets.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ robots can help people have more time to relax at home.
5. Thanks to \_\_\_\_\_ robots, roads and bridges are built faster, making transportation more and more convenient.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ robots are becoming more and more popular these days as they are able to both deliver the lesson and manage students' homework.
7. In disaster-stricken areas, people use \_\_\_\_\_ robots to aid in search of humans and properties.
8. Do you think that \_\_\_\_\_ robots can diagnose complicated diseases?

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word given.**

1. Do robots have the \_\_\_\_\_ to express feelings? ABLE
2. Are they in \_\_\_\_\_ about the impact of robots? AGREE

3. Humanoid robots are \_\_\_\_\_ examples of the development of artificial intelligence. TYPE
4. Sophia, a humanoid robot made her first public \_\_\_\_\_ in 2016. APPEAR
5. Robots can be programmed to deliver a \_\_\_\_\_. SPEAK
6. Will future robots be equipped with emotional \_\_\_\_\_ like a human being? EXPRESS
7. With the development of technology, robots can do many \_\_\_\_\_ things for humans. COMPLICATE
8. Scientists are working on \_\_\_\_\_ doctors which can actually work in hospitals. ROBOT

## II. Ngữ âm

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underline part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>co</u> in	B. <u>bo</u> y	C. <u>no</u> un	D. <u>po</u> int
2. A. <u>de</u> stroy	B. <u>jo</u> y	C. <u>bo</u> il	D. <u>ou</u> t
3. A. <u>to</u> y	B. <u>po</u> wer	C. <u>ar</u> ound	D. <u>ho</u> w
4. A. <u>to</u> wn	B. <u>al</u> low	C. <u>po</u> ison	D. <u>mo</u> uth
5. A. <u>ou</u> rs	B. <u>spo</u> il	C. <u>to</u> wer	D. <u>mo</u> use
6. A. <u>co</u> w	B. <u>do</u> wn	C. <u>ou</u> tline	D. <u>av</u> oid
7. A. <u>jo</u> int	B. <u>cho</u> ice	C. <u>go</u> wn	D. <u>lo</u> yal
8. A. <u>lou</u> dly	B. <u>ow</u> l	C. <u>po</u> und	D. <u>jo</u> in
9. A. <u>ann</u> ounce	B. <u>bo</u> yfriend	C. <u>ann</u> oy	D. <u>oi</u> ly
10. A. <u>tom</u> boy	B. <u>so</u> il	C. <u>mo</u> untain	D. <u>ro</u> yal
11. A. <u>hou</u> sewife	B. <u>pro</u> ud	C. <u>drou</u> ght	D. <u>toi</u> let
12. A. <u>sou</u> r	B. <u>appo</u> int	C. <u>mo</u> isture	D. <u>vo</u> yage
13. A. <u>ou</u> tside	B. <u>pu</u> t	C. <u>vo</u> w	D. <u>rejo</u> ice
14. A. <u>so</u> ya	B. <u>overjo</u> yed	C. <u>andro</u> id	D. <u>anyho</u> w
15. A. <u>drow</u> n	B. <u>clow</u> n	C. <u>spo</u> il	D. <u>boun</u> ce

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. earplug	B. seatbelt	C. policeman	D. seaweed
2. A. bedroom	B. rainfall	C. motorcycle	D. ill-tempered
3. A. blackbird	B. easy-going	C. greenhouse	D. childhood
4. A. old-fashioned	B. newspaper	C. sunglasses	D. fundraiser
5. A. two-thirds	B. waterproof	C. colour-blind	D. outlook
6. A. low-key	B. low-cost	C. airplane	D. high-class

7. A. runway	B. postcard	C. friendship	D. duty-free
8. A. bedroom	B. someone	C. high-speed	D. network
9. A. overdue	B. toothpaste	C. flashlight	D. nightgown
10. A. football	B. telegram	C. photograph	D. department
11. A. overnight	B. weather	C. busboy	D. weatherboard
12. A. heartbreak	B. ghost-writer	C. economy	D. phonebooth
13. A. departure	B. station	C. lightbulb	D. porky
14. A. getaway	B. breakdown	C. well-known	D. make-up

**Exercise 3: Put the words into the right column. There are some words that do not belong to any group.**

toy	out	oyster	mouth	low	royal	sound	enjoy
down	loud	annoy	ouch	clown	cow	boat	oink
downtown	soil	now	brown	row	noisy	moist	bow
wow	so	oil	voice	no	boy	boiling	
<b>/ɔɪ/</b>				<b>/aʊ/</b>			

### III. Ngữ pháp

**Exercise 1: Fill in the blank with the correct form of *can/could/be able to*.**

1. Can you read this article for us? We \_\_\_\_\_ not see properly without my glasses.
2. After 3 years in Spain, I \_\_\_\_\_ speak Spanish fluently now.
3. When my mom was young, she \_\_\_\_\_ play the piano really well.
4. After 2 hours climbing, we finally \_\_\_\_\_ reach the top of the mountain at 8 am yesterday.
5. Yesterday I lost my wallet. I looked for it everywhere, but I \_\_\_\_\_ not find it.
6. If you ask Sarah this question, she will \_\_\_\_\_ help you.
7. When I was 3 years old, I used to \_\_\_\_\_ do a cartwheel.

8. Anna was not at home yesterday, so I \_\_\_\_\_ not contact her.
9. I hate not \_\_\_\_\_ understand my English friends.
10. I've never \_\_\_\_\_ speak Chinese as well as my sister.

**Exercise 2: Choose the correct answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you play the violin?  
A. Couldn't                      B. Can                      C. Able to
2. \_\_\_\_\_ become a professional athlete, you must be very fit.  
A. Could                      B. Will you be able to                      C. To be able to
3. Do you think you \_\_\_\_\_ finish this work by Monday?  
A. could                      B. will be able to                      C. be able to
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ stay in that room any longer. It was too noisy.  
A. can't                      B. have not been able to                      C. couldn't
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you come to Lennon's birthday party last night?  
A. Could                      B. Can                      C. Can't
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do this difficult exercise. See!  
A. can                      B. could                      C. will be able to
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you understand what the professor was talking about?  
A. Could                      B. Can                      C. May
8. I'm afraid that I \_\_\_\_\_ attend today's meeting. I'm still at the airport.  
A. will be able to                      B. won't be able to                      C. can
9. Will people \_\_\_\_\_ live on Mars one day?  
A. can                      B. be able to                      C. could be able to
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ speak when I was less than a year old.  
A. could                      B. can                      C. have could
11. How long have you \_\_\_\_\_ drive a motorbike?  
A. can                      B. could                      C. been able to
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you bring the book *AU The Bright Places* for me tomorrow?  
A. can                      B. Could                      C. Are you able to
13. They \_\_\_\_\_ save the child from the burning house.  
A. was able to                      B. were able to                      C. could to
14. I \_\_\_\_\_ never seem to play this note right.

A. can't                                      B. can                                      C. am able to

15. Madam, \_\_\_\_\_ you tell me what time is it, please?

A. Could                                      B. Can                                      C. Will

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with *must have/might have/should have/can't have*.**

1. I did not know you were going to Paris yesterday. You \_\_\_\_\_ told me in advance!

2. The grass is wet. It \_\_\_\_\_ rained last night.

3. Nobody picked up the phone at the office. It \_\_\_\_\_ closed today.

4. Sarah hasn't arrived yet. She \_\_\_\_\_ caught the wrong bus. I know for sure!

5. They \_\_\_\_\_ taken the train to work. I'm not sure.

6. I saw you at the football match yesterday. You \_\_\_\_\_ been ill like you said.

7. Anna \_\_\_\_\_ passed the exam - she did not study anything.

8. You \_\_\_\_\_ known that we are having an English test today. The teacher told us all yesterday.

9. You \_\_\_\_\_ told me about the discount. I could have got this bag \$1,000 cheaper.

10. You \_\_\_\_\_ studied harder. Your scores are very low.

**Exercise 4: Choose one word from the table to fill in the blank, using the structure *must have/might have/should (not) have/would (not) have + P<sub>II</sub>*.**

<i>decide</i>	<i>drink</i>	<i>enroll</i>	<i>drop</i>	<i>catch</i>
<i>so</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>break down</i>	<i>choose</i>	<i>come</i>

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ so much beer last night. I feel dizzy now.

2. The engine is not starting. It \_\_\_\_\_.

3. You \_\_\_\_\_ a cold if you had worn a coat outside yesterday.

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ to join in that English club. It was a pretty bad idea.

5. A: Why didn't Sarah come to the birthday party last night?

- B: She \_\_\_\_\_ to stay at home and rest.

6. He \_\_\_\_\_ in the English course, but the application period was over.

7. I cannot find my phone. I \_\_\_\_\_ it somewhere in the room.

8. I \_\_\_\_\_ to work by train, but I missed the bus in the morning.

9. You \_\_\_\_\_ to this restaurant on Friday night. There are crowds of people there at that time.

10. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ the problem as me.

**Exercise 5: Correct these sentences.**

1. This group project would be very fun. I regret I didn't do it.

2. It's so sad that you didn't join the party. You would enjoy it so much.

3. Someone must have took my pen. It's not on the table anymore.

4. I should take a look at the weather forecast before going to school yesterday.

5. My dad would bring me to the airport this morning, but his car broke down.

6. You should tell me about your problem, I could have helped you.

7. J. K. Rowling is a very popular author. You must hear of her.

8. I feel a lot better now. The medicine I took last night must be helpful.

9. We could stay longer, but we decided to go home.

10. I would text you, but I didn't know your phone number.

## C - BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

**Exercise 1: Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from others.**

1. A. <u>bread</u>	B. <u>thread</u>	C. <u>threat</u>	D. <u>heat</u>
2. A. <u>develo<u>p</u>s</u>	B. <u>takes</u>	C. <u>column</u> s	D. <u>map</u> s
3. A. <u>favouri</u> te	B. <u>bas</u> ic	C. <u>subscri</u> be	D. <u>deli</u> very
4. A. <u>foot</u>	B. <u>foot</u> step	C. <u>good</u>	D. <u>fool</u>
5. A. <u>char</u> ity	B. <u>char</u> acter	C. <u>choi</u> r	D. <u>orch</u> id

**Exercise 2: Choose the word whose main stress is different from the others.**

1. A. <u>history</u>	B. <u>attraction</u>	C. <u>literature</u>	D. <u>mountain</u>
2. A. <u>between</u>	B. <u>behind</u>	C. <u>excited</u>	D. <u>confident</u>

3. A. furniture	B. expensive	C. uniform	D. notebook
4. A. neighbourhood	B. delicious	C. friendly	D. angry
5. A. traffic	B. cathedral	C. fantastic	D. exciting

**Exercise 3: Fill in the blank with the correct word. One word can be filled in more than one sentence.**

<i>can</i>	<i>(not) have to</i>	<i>may</i>	<i>can't</i>
<i>(not) allowed to</i>	<i>should</i>	<i>need</i>	<i>must</i>

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ be tired because you are working very hard these days.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ not speak during the listening test!
3. Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ go to school because she is having a stomachache.
4. The kid is \_\_\_\_\_ ride his bike at night. He is just 5 years old, so it's not allowed.
5. Samuel has been living in England for years. He \_\_\_\_\_ speak English very well.
6. You are \_\_\_\_\_ to smoke here. This is a smoking-forbidden area.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ go to the doctor's when he feels sick.
8. It is much later than I thought. I \_\_\_\_\_ probably go now.
9. I can hear you clearly. You \_\_\_\_\_ not shout.
10. You \_\_\_\_\_ turn your mobile phone off before coming in the test room.
11. Talk to Professor about your problems. I'm sure he \_\_\_\_\_ help you.
12. I am not sure where I will go for summer holidays, but I \_\_\_\_\_ go to China.
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ hear what he is saying. He should speak louder.
14. You are \_\_\_\_\_ play basketball here. It's a residential area, no sports allowed.
15. Smoking is absolutely not good for your health. You \_\_\_\_\_ stop smoking as soon as possible!
16. \_\_\_\_\_ you help me with this exercise? It's so hard for me.
17. This is not an important work. You \_\_\_\_\_ do it later.
18. You \_\_\_\_\_ bring your ID Card to the test centre. It's the rule.
19. Anna \_\_\_\_\_ not clean the room because her mom has already done it.
20. You \_\_\_\_\_ a professional trainer if you want a proper working out schedule.
21. You \_\_\_\_\_ not eat so much chocolate because it's bad for your teeth.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ you speak French?
23. \_\_\_\_\_ go out, please?

24. I do not know what to do this weekend, but I \_\_\_\_\_ just stay home.

25. You have lots of time. You \_\_\_\_\_ be hurry.

**Exercise 4: Complete the sentence with a suitable Past Modal Verb (should have/must have/might have/can't have).**

1. I did not know you were going to the club yesterday. You \_\_\_\_\_ told me first. I was so worried!

2. Sean looked very happy. He \_\_\_\_\_ passed his English test. He was so nervous before taking the exam.

3. I can't believe Anna has not arrived yet. She \_\_\_\_\_ got on the wrong bus.

4. You \_\_\_\_\_ been more focused. You don't understand anything about Geometry.

5. The door was not locked, so the thieves \_\_\_\_\_ got in really easy.

6. I don't know where my parents went for their anniversary, but they \_\_\_\_\_ visited Madrid or Amsterdam.

7. Anna \_\_\_\_\_ been ill yesterday. I saw her at the shopping mall yesterday.

8. We really enjoyed the concert. You \_\_\_\_\_ come with us.

9. Jimmy was crying all day long. He \_\_\_\_\_ failed the final exam. He spent so much time studying but it still did not work.

10. All she wears is designer clothes. She \_\_\_\_\_ bought them in fancy stores.

**Exercise 5: Fill in the blank with the correct form of the verb given.**

<i>recognize</i>	<i>guard</i>	<i>explore</i>	<i>improve</i>	<i>emerge</i>
<i>do</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>invent</i>	<i>trim</i>	<i>help</i>

1. I have bought a household robot which can \_\_\_\_\_ the hedge for me.

2. Robots now can \_\_\_\_\_ humans' voice and do the tasks they are asked to do.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ laundry and cleans used to be a time-consuming task for housewives.

4. People are employing robots \_\_\_\_\_ their house so that their house are secure.

5. My new tutor robot can \_\_\_\_\_ me manage my study time and assign homework to me.

6. I hope that they will \_\_\_\_\_ a new type of robot which can work as a receptionist.

7. Do you know when the first robot \_\_\_\_\_ as a useful tool for manufacturing?

8. Scientists are working hard \_\_\_\_\_ the stability and efficiency of computers.

9. It is thought that robots cannot \_\_\_\_\_ after babies as well as a human babysitter.

10. So as to \_\_\_\_\_ planets, scientists have sent a lot of robots to the outer space.

**Exercise 6: Choose the best answer.**

1. In the past, people \_\_\_\_\_ spend a lot of time doing household chores but robots can help them now.  
A. could                      B. had to                      C. must                      D. were able to
2. These robots need \_\_\_\_\_ regularly so that they work effectively.  
A. maintaining              B. to maintain              C. maintain              D. maintained
3. Robots have \_\_\_\_\_ an important role in keeping human workers from danger.  
A. played                      B. made                      C. contributed              D. impacted
4. Since their emergence, robots \_\_\_\_\_ to perform many complicated tasks.  
A. will be able              B. are able                      C. have been able              D. were able
5. Do you think current robots can help people \_\_\_\_\_ their house?  
A. to protect                      B. protect                      C. protecting                      D. Both A and B
6. \_\_\_\_\_ tasks such as cleaning the house or doing the laundry are now carried out by robots in an efficient way.  
A. Complicated              B. Simple                      C. Dangerous                      D. Unusual
7. In the past, Jane used to \_\_\_\_\_ walk two kilometres to work but she is too old now to do it.  
A. can                      B. could                      C. be able to                      D. may
8. After the discussion, we agreed \_\_\_\_\_ each other that we shouldn't be over-reliant on robots.  
A. to                      B. about                      C. at                      D. with
9. \_\_\_\_\_ with robots is now a reality thanks to technological advancement.  
A. Conversing                      B. Conserving                      C. Contrasting                      D. Concerning
10. Apart \_\_\_\_\_ their role in heavy industry, what else can modern do to help humans?  
A. to                      B. for                      C. from                      D. about

**Exercise 7: Provide the correct form of the word given.**

1. Voice \_\_\_\_\_ is a feature of many modern robots. RECOGNISE
2. Robots nowadays play a \_\_\_\_\_ role in many industries. MAJORITY
3. I was upset because my co-workers \_\_\_\_\_ with most of my ideas. AGREE
4. Modern technology is making our life more and more \_\_\_\_\_. COMFORT
5. Space robots can be very \_\_\_\_\_ for humans to explore the universe. HELP

6. \_\_\_\_\_ tasks are currently performed by robots instead of human workers. DANGER
7. Despite the advancement of technology, I think robots are to have emotions. ABLE
8. \_\_\_\_\_ in foreign language can be translated by applications in our phone. CONVERSE
9. Scientists are working hard to \_\_\_\_\_ new types of robots which are helpful for daily activities. INVENTION
10. It is thought that people \_\_\_\_\_ so much on technology that they become lazy. DEPENDENCE

**Exercise 8: Choose the best answer to complete the following passage.**

Humans are relying (1) \_\_\_\_\_ robots to carry out a large number of tasks, and many jobs have become (2) \_\_\_\_\_ thanks to the development of robots. This consequently leads (3) \_\_\_\_\_ job losses in certain industries. (4) \_\_\_\_\_, there are still many industries and workflows that need humans. Artificial intelligence has the ability to do (5) \_\_\_\_\_ jobs in structured and predictable conditions like factories. They don't have the cognitive skills and critical thinking which are (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to perform more complicated tasks. For example, surgery should be done by experienced surgeons who have skills and ability to perceive and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ each individual situation. Similarly, robots (8) \_\_\_\_\_ work as human resource professionals who need great social skills to do the job well.

1. A. on	B. over	C. at	D. in
2. A. independent	B. automated	C. reliant	D. efficiency
3. A. about	B. for	C. to	D. into
4. A. Therefore	B. However	C. In addition	D. Thus
5. A. repetitive	B. protective	C. original	D. conservative
6. A. necessary	B. able	C. capable	D. practical
7. A. access	B. assess	C. allow	D. allot
8. A. are not able to	B. are able to	C. could	D. couldn't

**Exercise 9: Read the following passage and decide if the following statements are True (T) or False (F).**

**Ancient Robots**

What do you think of when you read the word 'robot'? Many people think about big machines in car factories or futuristic monsters in films. Few of us think about the past. But people were building incredible machines with human abilities hundreds of years ago! For example, Egyptian texts from 1100

BC mention moving statues which 'chose' the next king. None of these statues exists, but probably they were built using the ancient Egyptians' mechanical technology.

Another ancient robot was a big robotic arm called "The Claw". The ancient Greek writer Polybius wrote about it in 213 BC. It was built during a war with the Romans, and it hung over the city wall towards the sea. When a Roman ship came close, the arm picked up the front of the ship and lifted it into the air. Then the boat fell backwards into the sea and sank. Again, we don't know if the machine was really built, but it was possible with Ancient Greek technology.

Another ancient Greek inventor, Philon of Byzantium, built a female robot at about the same time. If someone placed a cup in her hand, it mixed water and wine to make a drink. But the robot wasn't popular because people didn't need robots to work. They had lots of slaves.

The famous artist Leonardo da Vinci loved designing robots. Few of his ideas were built, but his plans are very detailed. One modern-day robot engineer, Mark Rosheim, still uses them to get ideas when designing robots for NASA! One of da Vinci's robots was a lion. He built it for the king of France in 1515. It could walk and present flowers! In 2009, engineers used the plans to build it again. It worked perfectly.

**According to the passage,**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Robots are only the products of modern technology.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The moving statues which chose the next Egyptian king still exist.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The Claw was invented and written about by a Greek man called Polybius.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ We can't be sure about the existence of the ancient robotic arm.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Robots weren't needed in ancient Greece due to the availability of slaves.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Most of Leonardo da Vinci's robot designs were actually built.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Leonardo da Vinci's ideas still inspire modern robot designers.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ A lion robot was built for public use in 1515.

**Exercise 10: Rewrite these sentences using modal verbs: can(not)/ could (not)/ may (not)/ must (not)/ need (not).**

1. I wasn't able to attend your party last week as I was fully occupied.

→ I

2. I don't understand what you are saying.

→ I

3. Promise me that you will never make that mistake again!

→ You

4. Probably Mary did all the housework before she went out.

→ Mary may

5. There is no need to be here.

→ I

6. Perhaps she will come to the party tonight. Who knows?

→ She

7. It wasn't necessary for you to buy that book.

→ You

8. Why don't we go out for a walk? The weather is so good.

→ You

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 1

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

- |                         |                     |                     |                      |
|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>rou</u> nd     | B. <u>cou</u> ch    | C. <u>rou</u> tine  | D. <u>hou</u> sework |
| 2. A. <u>head</u> ache  | B. <u>bre</u> ad    | C. <u>wea</u> ther  | D. <u>appe</u> ar    |
| 3. A. <u>ch</u> air     | B. <u>ch</u> ildren | C. <u>che</u> mical | D. <u>cou</u> ch     |
| 4. A. <u>wa</u> terfall | B. <u>ba</u> seball | C. <u>sui</u> tcase | D. <u>era</u> ser    |
| 5. A. <u>des</u> k      | B. <u>seaso</u> n   | C. <u>lamps</u>     | D. <u>eat</u> s      |

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

- |                   |               |                |              |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. futuristic  | B. organic    | C. economic    | D. energetic |
| 2. A. education   | B. prevention | C. employee    | D. agreement |
| 3. A. contaminate | B. disaster   | C. protection  | D. admirable |
| 4. A. curable     | B. convincing | C. advancement | D. begin     |
| 5. A. seaside     | B. coastal    | C. palace      | D. erode     |

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the milk carefully. I don't want it to boil over.  
A. see                      B. watch                      C. examine                      D. notice
2. "Was he disappointed?" - "Yes, he found the movie \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. boring                      B. boringly                      C. bores                      D. bored
3. \_\_\_\_\_ 20 September, 1529, five small ships set sail from Spain.  
A. At                      B. In                      C. On                      D. By
4. Every student in those five rooms must bring \_\_\_\_\_ own books to class.  
A. one's                      B. someone's                      C. their                      D. his
5. You can join the club when you \_\_\_\_\_ older.  
A. will get                      B. get                      C. are getting                      D. can get

6. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ that for you?

- A. me doing                      B. that I do                      C. me do                      D. me to do

7. What do students often do \_\_\_\_\_ break?

- A. in                      B. for                      C. at                      D. on

8. \_\_\_\_\_ are you going to stay here? - For a week.

- A. How often                      B. How long                      C. How many                      D. How far

9. Eiffel Tower is the most attractive \_\_\_\_\_ in France.

- A. building                      B. resort                      C. square                      D. landmark

10. We should use \_\_\_\_\_ to save non-renewable natural resources.

- A. oil                      B. solar energy                      C. coal                      D. gas

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. After class, one of the students always (erase) \_\_\_\_\_ the chalkboard.

2. People (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money on advertising every day.

3. Thomas Edison (invent) \_\_\_\_\_ the phonograph in 1877.

4. For the past years, my mother (do) \_\_\_\_\_ all my washing by hand.

5. No one (believe) \_\_\_\_\_ his story.

6. The government (already / give) \_\_\_\_\_ the women in most countries the right to vote.

7. How many exercises (John / give) \_\_\_\_\_ to you last Sunday?

8. The detective (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the woman (put) \_\_\_\_\_ the jewelry in her bag yesterday.

9. The policeman advises the drivers (use) \_\_\_\_\_ an alternative route.

10. The boys (break) \_\_\_\_\_ the window and (take) \_\_\_\_\_ some pictures away last month.

11. My father (write) \_\_\_\_\_ six books since 2020.

12. Holidays abroad (become) \_\_\_\_\_ increasingly popular.

13. \_\_\_\_\_ (You / ever / meet) anyone famous?

14. People (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ English all over the world.

15. Ian (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a shower at the moment so you can call back later.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to walk alone in the woods at night. DANGER

2. She's one of the \_\_\_\_\_ women in the country. RICH

3. He was a successful \_\_\_\_\_ before becoming a writer. BUSINESS
4. In \_\_\_\_\_ to his apartment in Scotland, he has a villa in Italy. ADD
5. She has had to make some difficult \_\_\_\_\_. DECIDE
6. We speak on the phone about \_\_\_\_\_ a week. TWO
7. Is Phu Ninh a \_\_\_\_\_ district? MOUNTAIN
8. The forecast said it was going to be \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. SUN
9. We need to measure the of \_\_\_\_\_ the Great wall. WIDE
10. You want me to buy a new car - do you think I'm a \_\_\_\_\_? MILLION

**Section 4: Choose the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions and then correct it.**

1. That's my father over there. He stands near the window.  
 A. That's                      B. there                      C. stands                      D. near the window
2. Your marks in English are low although you don't study hard enough.  
 A. in English                      B. although                      C. don't                      D. hard enough
3. The Japanese are familiar with the western custom to eat a turkey for dinner.  
 A. are                      B. with                      C. to eat                      D. for
4. Phuc is the more intelligent student in the class.  
 A. is                      B. more                      C. student                      D. the class
5. Xo Dang men are good at architecture, sculpture, and paint.  
 A. are                      B. architecture                      C. sculpture                      D. paint
6. He isn't understand what you are saying.  
 A. isn't                      B. understand                      C. what                      D. saying

## PART C: READING

**Section 1: Read the passage and choose the word which best fits each gap.**

Americans like sport very much. One of the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ popular kinds of sports in Autumn is football. All the high schools and universities have (2) \_\_\_\_\_ own teams. In winter people spend most of their time (3) \_\_\_\_\_ basketball. There is usually a (4) \_\_\_\_\_ every evening in one school gymnasium or another. In some parts of the United States there (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of snow and ice. Many people like skiing and skating.

In the (6) \_\_\_\_\_ two seasons, millions of Americans enjoy baseball. The schools have their games in spring, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the most important professional games are played during summer.

Many people listen to the games on the radio, watch them on television or read about them in (8) \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers. Some also play tennis or golf and others (9) \_\_\_\_\_ fishing. They like to stay outdoors because it is warm during the months (10) \_\_\_\_\_. June, July and August.

1. A. more	B. most	C. much	D. as
2. A. her	B. his	C. their	D. its
3. A. to play	B. to do	C. doing	D. playing
4. A. match	B. game	C. team	D. pitch
5. A. is	B. was	C. are	D. were
6. A. others	B. other	C. another	D. no
7. A. so	B. or	C. and	D. but
8. A. a	B. an	C. the	D. x
9. A. go	B. do	C. play	D. catch
10. A. in	B. of	C. at	D. for

**Section 2: Fill each blank with a suitable word or phrase in the box to complete the passage.**

<i>pavilion</i>	<i>constructed</i>	<i>examination</i>	<i>divided</i>
<i>courtyard</i>	<i>university</i>	<i>teacher</i>	<i>celebrate</i>

The Temple of Literature is about 10 minutes away from Hoan Kiem lake. It was (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in 1070 under Ly Thanh Tong dynasty, first to honor Confucius and nowadays to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the doctorates and high rank scholars of Vietnam. In 1076, King Ly Nhan Tong continued the work and built Quoc Tu Giam as the first (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of Vietnam. The temple is (4) \_\_\_\_\_ into five court yards, each with its own significance and history'. The first courtyard stretches from the main gate to Dai Trung gate; the second stands out with Khue Van Cac (5) \_\_\_\_\_. If you notice well, you will find the pavilion symbol on all street signs of Hanoi. The third (6) \_\_\_\_\_ is where doctor names are listed on a tombstone on tortoise backs. The fourth courtyard is dedicated for Confucius and his 72 honoured students, as well as Chu Van An - a famous (7) \_\_\_\_\_ known for his devotion to teaching. The last and also furthest courtyard is Thai Hoc house, which used to be Quoc Tu Giam - the first university of Vietnam. Thai Hoc house holds a small collection of old-time costumes for students and mandarins, as well as explaining the process of taking and passing the national (8) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Section 3: Read the passage, then choose the best answer to answer the questions.**

Shin and Adam want to know their friends' favorite past times, so they are asking about exactly that. Many said that they enjoy eating food and beverages as well as chatting with their acquaintances. They like to talk about the things in their lives such as their lecturers, their neighbors, their parents as well as their favorite directors, movie stars, and football players. Besides, they tend to discuss the latest news and headlines. There are several popular activities after lessons at their school, namely self-studying at the library, planting trees, and playing sports. At home, many of their friends say they are keen on making handmade items, listening to music, or playing computer games. They hardly ever go to the movies. The girls fancy going on a shopping spree every now and then. A lot of people hate doing English assignments online. Most of them aren't a part of any art or music clubs.

1. What is the main idea of the passage?

- |                             |  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| A. Shin and Adam's pastimes | B. Shin and Adam's school                          |
| C. Shin and Adam's friends  | D. Free time activities of Shin and Adam's friends |

2. Which topics do Shin and Adam's friends want to discuss?

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A. Their teachers and families | B. The newest information |
| C. Many things around them     | D. Their favorite actors  |

3. Which of the following activities is **NOT** popular with Shin and Adam's friends at school?

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. Revising the lessons on their own | B. Taking part in art, music club |
| C. Growing trees                     | D. Playing badminton              |

4. Which of the following activities is **NOT** favored by Shin and Adam's friends at home?

- |  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| A. Practicing online English exercises | B. Playing computer games |
| C. Doing stuff by yourself             | D. Listening to music     |

5. Which of the following activities is **NOT** mentioned in the passage as an usual one that Adam and Shin's friends do in their free time?

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| A. Watching films at the movie theatre | B. Going shopping                  |
| C. Eating and drinking                 | D. Chatting with the other friends |

## **PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences using the word given in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. My sister walks to the supermarket.

→ My sister goes

2. Our school is to the right of the grocery store.

→ The grocery store

3. Do your sisters cycle to work?

→ Do your sisters get

4. There are several roses and tulips in my grandparents' yard.

→ My grandparents' yard

5. No house in this street is cheaper than my house.

→ My house

6. David drives to work every morning.

→ David travels

7. Ben is 1.75 meters tall. Alexis is 1.65 meters tall.

→ Alexis is not

8. Shakira is the smartest student in my class.

→ No

9. His school is behind the hotel.

→ The hotel

10. David's house isn't far from the library. (NEAR)

---

11. The bookshop is to the right of the restaurant and to the left of the police station. (BETWEEN)

---

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. What time/ Shelton/ get/ every morning?

---

2. She/ suggest/ go/ for/ walk.

---

3. Weather/ Ha Noi/ different/ Ho Chi Minh City.

---

4. Jenny/ walk/ ride/ bike/ school?

---

5. We/ ought/ finish/ homework/ before/ go/ shopping.

---

6. What/ kind/ book/ you/ enjoy/ read?

---

7. My friend/ like/ watch television/ good/ read books.

---

8. My class/ start/ seven/ morning/ finish/ eleven.

---

9. I/ not often/ swimming/ friends.

---

10. Levine/ read/ book/ sister/ sing/ English song/ now.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about the most popular kind of sports in your school.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 2

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. <u>this</u>	B. <u>think</u>	C. <u>thank</u>	D. <u>thieves</u>
2. A. tea <u>cher</u>	B. <u>ch</u> ess	C. lun <u>ch</u>	D. <u>s</u> chool
3. A. grandparent <u>s</u>	B. brother <u>s</u>	C. uncl <u>s</u>	D. father <u>s</u>
4. A. pla <u>y</u> s	B. sa <u>y</u> s	C. da <u>y</u> s	D. sta <u>y</u> s
5. A. stat <u>i</u> on	B. intersec <u>t</u> ion	C. quest <u>i</u> on	D. invit <u>a</u> tion

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. popular	B. sportsman	C. competition	D. marathon
2. A. comfort	B. nation	C. moment	D. apply
3. A. listen	B. receive	C. teacher	D. driver
4. A. exciting	B. dangerous	C. historic	D. expensive
5. A. karate	B. swimming	C. running	D. tennis

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

1. There is a family photo \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.

A. on                      B. at                      C. in                      D. to

2. He can't swim \_\_\_\_\_ he is afraid of water.

A. because              B. but                      C. and                      D. so

3. I don't want much sugar in my coffee. Just \_\_\_\_\_ please.

A. little                      B. few                      C. a few                      D. a little

4. We are excited \_\_\_\_\_ the first day of school.

A. at                      B. about                      C. with                      D. in

5. I am having a Math lesson, however, I forgot my \_\_\_\_\_.

A. calculator              B. globe                      C. dictionary              D. map

6. If you read more, your vocabulary will get \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
A. good                      B. better                      C. well                      D. best
7. We should put a \_\_\_\_\_ bin in every classroom in order to keep it clean?  
A. reusable                      B. recycled                      C. recycling                      D. recyclable
8. Ha Long Bay is one of \_\_\_\_\_ wonders in Vietnam.  
A. most beautiful natural                      B. most natural beautiful  
C. the most beautiful natural                      D. the most natural beautiful
9. "I've just received a scholarship. " \_\_\_\_\_!".  
A. Congratulations                      B. Thank you                      C. Really                      D. Well
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the newsreader reads very fast, my brother can hear everything in the news.  
A. But                      B. When                      C. Although                      D. Because

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. I think people (live) \_\_\_\_\_ on Mars someday.
2. I (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ hungry and I (not want) \_\_\_\_\_ any rice.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ be) angry if he refuses to help you?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ (Diana/ walk) to school yesterday?
5. This is the best calculator I (ever have) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. My father (not go) \_\_\_\_\_ to work yesterday. He (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ to his hometown.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ (never/ be) on TV. 8. My sisters (do) \_\_\_\_\_ morning exercises every day.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (your mother/ walk) to work twice a week?
10. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ ten o'clock. We (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ History.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. Lan is \_\_\_\_\_. She's always on the phone, chatting to friends. TALK
2. This coffee is too \_\_\_\_\_ for us to drink. HEAT
3. He wants to be a \_\_\_\_\_ because he likes making people laugh. COMEDY
4. He gave me strict \_\_\_\_\_ to get there by eight o'clock. INSTRUCT
5. The football fans cheered \_\_\_\_\_ for their side. LOUD
6. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ coming to the city every year. VISIT
7. Thailand is \_\_\_\_\_ for ancient and beautiful temples. FAME
8. She sent me best wishes for my future \_\_\_\_\_. HAPPY
9. My father is a \_\_\_\_\_. He can repair machines. MACHINE

10. The evening menu offers a wide \_\_\_\_\_ of dishes. CHOOSE

**Section 4: Choose the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions and then correct it.**

1. It is the more interesting novel that I have ever read.

A. the more                      B. interesting                      C. ever                      D. read

2. The Royal Palace is one of the largest palace in Europe.

A. is                      B. one                      C. palace                      D. in Europe

3. How many tea do you want? - I want a kilo of tea.

A. How many                      B. tea                      C. a kilo                      D. of

4. Each student studying chemistry have to spend at least three hours in the laboratory.

A. studying                      B. have to                      C. at least                      D. in

5. Look at that strange man! He is looking at Lan but she isn't here.

A. Look at                      B. is looking                      C. at                      D. but

6. They are going to take some photoes at the beach.

A. are                      B. to take                      C. photos                      D. at

7. He was absent from work yesterday because of his ill.

A. from                      B. because of                      C. his                      D. ill

8. There are much music programmes on TV nowadays.

A. There                      B. much                      C. programmes                      D. on TV

9. Remember to wash and ironing your own clothes everyday.

A. to wash                      B. ironing                      C. own                      D. clothes

10. Although the football game was over, but the fans stayed in their seats cheering.

A. the football                      B. was                      C. but                      D. stayed

## **PART C: READING**

**Section 1: Read the passage and think of ONE suitable word which best fits each gap.**

Vietnam is in South- East Asia. It has lots (1) \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful mountains, rivers and beaches.

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ are two long rivers in Vietnam: the Red River in the north (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the

Mekong River - which (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in the south. The Mekong River is (5) \_\_\_\_\_

longest river in the South-East Asia and of course it is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ than the Red River. The

Mekong River starts in Tibet and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ to the sea. Phanxipang is the highest (8)

\_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam. It's 3,143 meters (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Vietnam also has several nice beaches (10) \_\_\_\_\_ as Sam Son, Do Son, Nha Trang, Vung Tau.

**Section 2: Read the passage, then choose the best answer to answer the questions.**

"Water polo is a new sport at our school, but we have a good team now. We practise after school on Thursday at the Northside Pool and we're doing well in the National Schools Competition.

There are seven players in a water polo team. The game is a bit like football because each team tries to score a goal with a ball. But in water polo you don't use your feet - you catch and throw the ball with one hand. And you never stop swimming. A game lasts 32 minutes, and in that time, you swim up and down a 30-metre pool lots of times. If you aren't fit, water polo isn't the sport for you!

For me, it's great, because I love being in the water and I can swim fast. I also enjoy being part of a team. We have some excellent players and we're all good friends. So it's fun, and it's also a fantastic way to get fit."

*Leo Johnson*

1. Leo \_\_\_\_\_.

A. isn't very fit                      B. likes playing individually      C. can swim quickly

2. His team plays \_\_\_\_\_.

A. well                                  B. badly                                  C. in a new competition

3. In a water polo game, players \_\_\_\_\_.

A. can't use their hands      B. swim all the time                  C. rarely swim 30 metres

4. Water polo players \_\_\_\_\_.

A. doesn't kick the ball      B. bounce the ball                  C. often play football

5. People play water polo \_\_\_\_\_.

A. in a stadium                      B. at the beach                      C. in a swimming pool

**Section 3: Read the passage, then answer the questions.**

The most important celebration holiday in China is the Lunar New Year. At this time, shops are closed. People celebrate by having parties, by paying friendly phone calls to their neighbors, and by visiting the temples or pagodas to make promises for the New Year. Children walk through the streets, carrying colourful lanterns and paper figures. Fireworks are also set off to light up the sky.

The time of the New Year is also the time at which Chinese people decorate their homes. For example, the windows, which are made of thick rice paper are torn down, and new ones are put up. This is also the time during which people pay their debts. Everyone tries to settle all their bills before the beginning of

the New Year. Before New Year's Eve, people make their homes attractive by decorating them with flowers and plants, and hanging brightly - coloured decorations.

1. What's this passage about?

---

2. What do children do at Chinese Lunar New Year?

---

3. Is the Lunar New Year an important Chinese holiday?

---

4. How can people make their homes attractive?

---

5. When do they try to settle all their bills?

---

## **PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. No one in my class is as hard-working as Usher.

→ Usher

2. Those bottles belong to Blake.

→ Blake is

3. How much are these pencil cases?

→ How much do

4. Mr. Rowling runs slowly.

→ Mr. Rowling is

5. Let's participate in the English speaking Contest.

→ Why

6. I spend thirty minutes writing a paragraph.

→ It

7. How long is Me Kong river?

→ What

8. Marinda fancies playing volleyball most.

→ Volleyball is

9. Three months ago, Katy flew to Australia by plane.

→ Three months ago, Katy went

10. The post office is to the right of my house. My house to the right of the toy store.

→ My house is

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. Tomorrow/ Celina/ buy/ flowers/ her sister/ graduation ceremony.

---

2. If/ people/ plant/ more/ trees/ there/ not be/ floods.

---

3. My friend/ good/ speak/ English/ but/ she/ bad/ write.

---

4. We/ mustn't/ drive/ right/ Canada.

---

5. What/ weather/ like/ India?

---

6. Minh/ begin/ collect/ stamps/ 2016.

---

7. We/ been/ close friends/ a long time.

---

8. I/ hope/ we/ have/ good time/ there.

---

9. Many children/ prefer/ play video games/ watch TV.

---

10. A house/ city/ expensive/ than/ a house/ country.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about your most favorite TV program.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 3

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. l <u>i</u> ving	B. w <u>i</u> reless	C. h <u>i</u> -tech	D. n <u>i</u> ce
2. A. volun <u>t</u> eer	B. nightm <u>a</u> re	C. cl <u>e</u> ar	D. che <u>e</u> rful
3. A. sp <u>a</u> ce	B. loc <u>a</u> ted	C. l <u>a</u> ke	D. cott <u>a</u> ge
4. A. mach <u>i</u> ne	B. <u>c</u> heap	C. watc <u>h</u>	D. <u>ch</u> ildren
5. A. with <u>o</u> ut	B. toget <u>h</u> er	C. bat <u>h</u>	D. leath <u>er</u>

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. decide	B. suggest	C. answer	D. request
2. A. president	B. dangerous	C. engineer	D. wonderful
3. A. bamboo	B. handbag	C. singer	D. teacher
4. A. builder	B. doctor	C. happy	D. arrive
5. A. letter	B. apply	C. improve	D. allow

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

- A robot won't be able to \_\_\_\_\_ of babies.  
A. take note      B. take care      C. take after      D. take up
- If you have a smart watch, you can \_\_\_\_\_ your friends in other countries.  
A. talk      B. speak      C. say      D. contact
- We can save a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ if we remember to turn off all the electric appliances when we go out.  
A. electricity      B. electrical      C. electric      D. electrician
- If people use \_\_\_\_\_ paper, they can save a lot of trees.  
A. fewer      B. more      C. much      D. less

5. Robots will be able to work harder and longer than people \_\_\_\_\_ getting tired and complaining.

- A. with                      B. without                      C. but                      D. so

6. Is there any \_\_\_\_\_ in the bin? Yes, there are some.

- A. cups                      B. rubbish                      C. plates                      D. spoons

7. I wanted to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ table.

- A. round blue Italian dining                      B. blue round Italian dining  
C. round blue dining Italian                      D. blue round dining Italian

8. “\_\_\_\_\_?” - “It is big.

- A. What does the robot like                      B. What is the robot like  
C. What does the robot look like                      D. What is the robot

9. In football the \_\_\_\_\_ needs to catch the ball.

- A. goal                      B. footballer                      C. goalkeeper                      D. referee

10. Blackburn Rover is at the bottom of the league. They \_\_\_\_\_ most of their matches.

- A. lost                      B. scored                      C. won                      D. played

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Mr. Thompson (teach) \_\_\_\_\_ Literature in this school for a couple of years.

2. Would you like (come) \_\_\_\_\_ to my house for dinner?

3. Jack is interested in (open) \_\_\_\_\_ a bar.

4. Will robots be able (recognize) \_\_\_\_\_ our voice?

5. It is the most wonderful beach I (ever/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ to.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. My mother is a \_\_\_\_\_ of English. TEACH

2. The air in the country is more \_\_\_\_\_ than the air in the city. POLLUTION

3. AIDS is a \_\_\_\_\_ disease. DANGER

4. In the \_\_\_\_\_ there is a museum, a factory and a stadium. NEIGHBOR

5. VTV1 is a \_\_\_\_\_ television channel in Vietnam. NATION

6. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in the summer. ACT

7. You shouldn't eat \_\_\_\_\_ food. HEALTH

8. The room will look more \_\_\_\_\_ if there is a picture in the wall. BEAUTY

9. This lovely apartment has two bedrooms and it is \_\_\_\_\_. FURNISH

10. My father has a \_\_\_\_\_ computer. He often brings it with him when he is on business.

PORT

**Section 4: Choose the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions and then correct it.**

1. Look! My friends is playing football very well.

A. Look                      B. is playing                      C. very                      D. well

2. Do they have a big house? - No. They have a small ones.

A. Do they have                      B. a big house                      C. No                      D. a small ones

3. My classmates always have a picnic two a year.

A. My classmates                      B. always                      C. have                      D. two

4. Is there some water in the bottle?

A. Is                      B. some                      C. in                      D. bottle

5. We will have special remote control units to surfing the Internet.

A. have                      B. remote                      C. units                      D. surfing

6. I detest walk in the rain. I like lying in the sunshine.

A. detest                      B. walk                      C. lying                      D. in

7. We would save our world if we protect our environment.

A. would                      B. save                      C. if                      D. protect

8. If you plant more trees, the air will be more fresh.

A. plant                      B. more                      C. will be                      D. more fresh

9. How much is a bowl of noodles? They are 20 thousand dong.

A. How much                      B. is                      C. noodles                      D. They are

10. If you want to look sporting, you should play sports regularly.

A. want                      B. sporting                      C. should play                      D. regularly

**Section 5: Put the following sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Well, what are you going to write about?

2. \_\_\_\_\_ B. Hmm... Isn't everybody going to write about that too?

3. \_\_\_\_\_ C. I'll write about kitchen robots that can prepare meals and clean the table.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Yeah, but it's due tomorrow.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Oh, I need to write a paper about the most necessary recent inventions. It's for my science class.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ F. OK. Well, I'm certain you'll have fascinating ideas. Good luck.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Hmm, the robot, I guess.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ H. That's not too difficult. There are several great inventions.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I. What's the matter with you? You don't look very happy.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Thank you, Sue.

## PART C: READING

**Section 1: Fill each blank with a suitable word or phrase in the box to complete the passage.**

<i>hardly</i>	<i>wettest</i>	<i>if</i>	<i>comprised</i>	<i>turning</i>
<i>more</i>	<i>telling</i>	<i>nights</i>	<i>end</i>	<i>reputation</i>

The city of Melbourne, Australia has always had a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ for unusual weather. Melbourne people enjoy (2) \_\_\_\_\_ this joke to visitors: if you don't like the weather in Melbourne, don't worry, just wait five minutes, because it's sure to change. At the beginning of 1992, Melbourne had its (3) \_\_\_\_\_ January for over 100 years. It rained for nine days on (4) \_\_\_\_\_. As well as raining all day, the weather was also cold. At night, people in some Melbourne suburbs were (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on their heating as (6) \_\_\_\_\_ it was winter. It was so cold many people could (7) \_\_\_\_\_ believe that it was summer at all.

The best weather in Melbourne, however, is not usually in the summer: it is in the autumn. The autumn usually has (8) \_\_\_\_\_ pleasant days than the summer. The weather in autumn is usually (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of warm days and cool, comfortable (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Section 2: Read the passage, then choose the best answer to answer the questions.**

The elephant is the largest animal to ever walk the surface of the Earth we live on. An elephant can carry a load upwards of 1,200 pounds. They eat 300 pounds worth of food every single day. Their young can weigh as much as 200 pounds at birth. Their lifespan is roughly 70 years. Some can even be trained to carry wooden logs with their trunks. They also use it trunks for drinking, bathing, eating and "talk" to other elephants nearby. There are two kinds of elephants: African and Indian elephant. The African elephant grows up to 10 feet and weighs as much as 12,000 pounds. The Indian elephant can grow up to be 9 feet tall, and weigh up to 800 pounds. This elephant often has smaller ears. The Indian elephant is also known as the Asian Elephant.

1. What is the topic of the passage?

- A. African elephant    B. Elephants    C. Indian elephant    D. Elephants' trunks

2. Which of the following activities is NOT done by elephants' trunks, according to the passage?

- A. carrying logs      B. bathing      C. communicating      D. sleeping
3. How much does a baby elephant weigh when it is born?
- A. 200 pounds      B. 300 pounds      C. 70 pounds      D. 1,200 pounds
4. An African elephant has \_\_\_\_\_ than an Indian elephant.
- A. smaller teeth      B. a weaker trunk      C. a shorter tail      D. bigger ears
5. Which can NOT be the age of an elephant?
- A. 70 years      B. 10 years      C. 80 years      D. 50 years

## **PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. She began to learn to swim 3 months ago.

→ She has

2. I didn't have any classes yesterday, so I played sports.

→ Because

3. She is short, but she still plays basketball.

→ Despite

4. Miss White's face is oval and it's small.

→ Miss White

5. How much is a loaf of bread?

→ How much does

6. No kinds of sports are more interesting than football.

→ Football is

7. Running non-stop in 30 minutes is beyond her ability.

→ She can

8. In spite of being able to lend the poor man some money, she didn't do so.

→ Although she could

9. Going on this road is much farther than going on that one.

→ Going on that road is not

10. My house has a large dining room and four bedrooms.

→ There is

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. Robots/ not only/ talk/ people/ but/ understand/ what/ people/ think/ future.

---

2. I/ agree/ you/ that/ life/ more comfortable/ future.

---

3. This film/ interesting/ any other films/I/ ever see/ before.

---

4. We/ not win/ match/ last week/ because/ some good players/ not join.

---

5. Kapalai/ attract/ lots/ tourists/ because/ it/ one/ most/ beautiful/ beach/ Malaysia.

---

6. Hoi An/ famous/ old buildings/ traditional crafts.

---

7. You/ already/ see/ latest Harry Porter film?

---

8. Although/ she/ tired/ she/ come/ class/ yesterday.

---

9. Nobody/ my class/ better/ Science/ Smith.

---

10. New market/ inconvenient/ because/ it/ far/ our flat building.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about your dream house in the future.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 4

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. lea <u>th</u> er	B. <u>th</u> eater	C. <u>th</u> rough	D. <u>th</u> eme
2. A. <u>wh</u> at	B. <u>wh</u> o	C. <u>wh</u> ere	D. <u>wh</u> en
3. A. <u>g</u> uidance	B. <u>g</u> eography	C. <u>v</u> egetable	D. <u>ch</u> allenge
4. A. <u>h</u> onest	B. <u>h</u> ousework	C. <u>h</u> unter	D. <u>h</u> ometown
5. A. <u>p</u> ostcard	B. <u>c</u> ontinent	C. <u>st</u> ormy	D. <u>c</u> offee

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. vulne <u>r</u> able	B. <u>s</u> atellite	C. <u>e</u> leven	D. <u>e</u> lement
2. A. <u>t</u> oothpaste	B. <u>w</u> indow	C. <u>h</u> appy	D. <u>c</u> artoon
3. A. <u>i</u> nteresting	B. <u>s</u> urprising	C. <u>a</u> musing	D. <u>s</u> uccessful
4. A. <u>p</u> osition	B. <u>n</u> eighbourhood	C. <u>a</u> thletic	D. <u>r</u> equirement
5. A. <u>w</u> indsurfing	B. <u>a</u> mateur	C. <u>e</u> quipment	D. <u>n</u> ational

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

- In team sports, the two teams \_\_\_\_\_ against each other in order to get the better score.  
A. are                      B. do                      C. make                      D. compete
- Football is regarded \_\_\_\_\_ the most popular sport in the world.  
A. for                      B. as                      C. like                      D. of
- When you go to the zoo, don't \_\_\_\_\_ the animals.  
A. play                      B. do                      C. tease                      D. watch
- Britain's most common \_\_\_\_\_ activities are watching TV and films, and listening to the radio.  
A. free                      B. leisure                      C. good                      D. popular
- The red double-decker bus is London's famous \_\_\_\_\_.

A. sign                      B. signal                      C. symbol                      D. logo

6. People must be well-prepared \_\_\_\_\_ they want to climb Mount Everest.

A. after                      B. until                      C. although                      D. before

7. Many Asian animals are \_\_\_\_\_ danger.

A. in                      B. on                      C. at                      D. of

8. Automatic dishwasher, modern fridge and wireless TV are \_\_\_\_\_ in the house.

A. household                      B. appliances                      C. electricity                      D. surroundings

9. This is a secret. You \_\_\_\_\_ anyone.

A. mustn't be                      B. mustn't tell                      C. mustn't say                      D. mustn't speak

10. Mary is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the three girls.

A. more beautiful                      B. more beautifully                      C. most beautiful                      D. most beautifully

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. How long (you/ wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for me? - Just a few minutes.

2. He (be) \_\_\_\_\_ able to speak Japanese after he finishes this course.

3. I find it difficult (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ how to use computer.

4. Robots help us (save) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of time and money.

5. He often makes me (laugh) \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Someone (just/ cut) \_\_\_\_\_ down all the trees in the garden.

7. I spent thirty minutes (do) \_\_\_\_\_ this exercise.

8. If I have a terrible headache, I (take) \_\_\_\_\_ some medicines.

9. Don't (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ so loudly! My son (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ in the next room.

10. He (can/ not) \_\_\_\_\_ swim when he (be) \_\_\_\_\_ 5 years old.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. This is our \_\_\_\_\_ anniversary. TWENTY

2. All \_\_\_\_\_ to New York are delayed because of bad weather. FLY

3. Yesterday we spent a \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon by the river. PEACE

4. She's a good student but she lacks \_\_\_\_\_. CONFIDENT

5. I tried aerobics but it was too \_\_\_\_\_ for me. ENERGY

6. When you finish doing the crossword, you can find the \_\_\_\_\_ on the back page. SOLVE

7. Sarah speaks perfect French as she spent much of her \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada. CHILD

8. Reducing the size of classes may improve \_\_\_\_\_ standards. EDUCATION

9. \_\_\_\_\_, we can't come this evening after all. FORTUNATE

10. Music and television are forms of \_\_\_\_\_. ENTERTAIN

**Section 4: Put the following sentences in the correct order to make a conversation.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A. Discovery channel.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ B. That seems exciting. Which channel is it on?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ C. At 8 o'clock Monday morning or 7 o'clock Friday evening.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ D. No. What is it?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ E. Really? I've never watched it. What country is it in?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Thank you. I'll watch it.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ G. Hey Adam, did you watch the pig race on TV yesterday?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ H. It's a sport. Pigs race around a tiny track. It's actually funny.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Well ... When is it shown?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ J. Australia, America... It's an attraction at many country fairs.

**PART C: READING**

**Section 1: Fill each blank with a suitable word or phrase in the box to complete the passage.**

<i>waste</i>	<i>surprised</i>	<i>resources</i>	<i>collecting</i>	<i>ton</i>
<i>money</i>	<i>thrown</i>	<i>discussion</i>	<i>requires</i>	<i>preserved</i>

Mary's class has a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ on waste paper. Her friends are so (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to learn that everyday throughout the world, millions of newspapers and paper bags are screwed and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ away. People are (4) \_\_\_\_\_ waste paper and recycling it. Making paper (5) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of trees and labor. Now if people don't (6) \_\_\_\_\_ paper, they can save labor and (7) \_\_\_\_\_. Especially, people can save the natural (8) \_\_\_\_\_. For every (9) \_\_\_\_\_ of recycled newsprint, ten trees can be saved. The more paper people save, the more trees are (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Section 2: Read the passage, then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Information about what happens in the world comes to us in many ways. Television and radio are two important ways of the news. They get the news out faster than the newspapers and magazines, and they don't have to be read. Television and radio stations broadcast the news several times each day. In America, there are the news programmes every hour. People are able to choose the favourite TV programmes, such as sports, films, fashion, news, etc. People who cannot read get the news from television or radio easily.

1. People are unable to select the TV programmes that they like. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Television stations broadcast the news a lot of times each day. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Television and radio get the news faster than other ways. \_\_\_\_\_
4. There are only two methods of getting the news. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Television cannot bring the news to people who do not know how to read. \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 3: Read the passage, then choose the best answer to answer the questions.**

My name is Andy and I love fishing. I can be at it for hours yet still not catch anything. But this fact does not bother me in anyway. Some are unlucky, and so am I. I never catch anything, not even old boots. I often spend the early morning by the river and I always go home before 10 o'clock, empty handed but an empty bag. "You quit this hobby", my friends said." It's a huge waste of time." But they do not understand that I, in fact, do not care about a fish or the fresh air, I just want to sit in a boat and do absolutely nothing.

1. Which can be the time that Andy goes fishing?  
A. At 7 p.m                      B. At 10 p.m                      C. At 9 a.m                      D. At 11 a.m
2. Where does he often sit when going fishing?  
A. In a boat                      B. At a large lake                      C. On the river bank                      D. In the sea
3. After Andy goes fishing, he usually brings \_\_\_\_\_ to home.  
A. ancient boots                      B. trash                      C. several fish                      D. nothing
4. What does Andy's friends advise him to do?  
A. Invite his friends to go fishing with him                      B. Give up fishing  
C. Spend more time on fishing                      D. Buy a new hook and line
5. Which is the reason that makes Andy go fishing?  
A. All of the below are incorrect                      B. He loves the feeling of catching fish  
C. He has a lot of things to do on a boat                      D. He wants to enjoy the atmosphere

**PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. John began to eat a low carb diet when he was 12 years old.  
→ John has
2. Let's go to the Korean restaurant tonight.  
→ How about

3. Could you take me to the cinema Sunday evening?

→ Would you mind

4. She eats fruits and veggies every day, but she keeps gaining weight.

→ Although

5. Joana doesn't eat much in order not to be overweight.

→ Joana doesn't eat much because

6. When did he start his hobby?

→ How long

7. I advise you not to come to her wedding anniversary.

→ I think you

8. It took me two weeks to make this pottery jug.

→ I spent

9. It isn't necessary to finish the work today.

→ You don't

10. The last time I spoke to Diana was at Christmas.

→ I haven't

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. I/ intend/ visit/ Singapore/ this summer.

---

2. My house/ have/ large yard/ so/ friends/I/ often/ play/ volleyball/ there.

---

3. Our teacher/ ask/ us/ write/ emails/ Japanese.

---

4. If/ we/ not throw/ trash/ water/ there/ be/ no/ water pollution.

---

5. No student/ my class/ tall/ Jack.

---

6. I/ hope/ the future/ he/ teach/ me/ how/ do/ eggshell carving.

---

7. They/ study/ this language /four years.

---

8. How many/ calories/ you burn/ after/ do/ aerobics/ hour?

---

9. I/ exercise/ daily/ because/I/ want/ stay/ healthy.

---

10. Sitting/ too/ close/ the TV/ hurt/ your eyes.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about your favourite room in your house.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 5

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. cit <u>a</u> del	B. vaca <u>a</u> tion	C. destina <u>t</u> ion	D. lemo <u>n</u> ade
2. A. danc <u>e</u> d	B. help <u>e</u> d	C. watch <u>e</u> d	D. enjoy <u>e</u> d
3. A. cal <u>o</u> rie	B. labo <u>u</u> r	C. co <u>m</u> munity	D. vo <u>l</u> unteer
4. A. divi <u>s</u> ion	B. occa <u>s</u> ion	C. en <u>s</u> ure	D. leis <u>u</u> re
5. A. dec <u>i</u> de	B. exhi <u>b</u> it	C. exci <u>t</u> ing	D. organiza <u>i</u> e

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. dedicate	B. impressive	C. reminder	D. descendant
2. A. optimist	B. historic	C. terrorist	D. powerful
3. A. visit	B. behind	C. routine	D. pollute
4. A. elegant	B. regional	C. musical	D. important
5. A. television	B. businessman	C. engineer	D. supermarket

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

1. My brother is a \_\_\_\_\_ driver. He drives very \_\_\_\_\_.

A. carefully/ careful    B. careful/ carefully    C. careful/ careful    D. care/ careful

2. Ho Chi Minh City is \_\_\_\_\_.

A. the most beautiful one of cities in Viet Nam.

B. most beautiful

C. more beautiful D. the more beautiful

3. Which is \_\_\_\_\_ - London or Tokyo?

A. the biggest    B. bigger    C. bigger than    D. the big

4. Whose book are you reading? It's \_\_\_\_\_.

A. English book    B. interesting    C. Mary's    D. about Mary

5. Look \_\_\_\_\_ that strange man. He is looking \_\_\_\_\_ Taylor but she isn't here.  
A. to - at                      B. at – for                      C. at - at                      D. to – for
6. Where is Anne from? She's from \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the France                      B. the French                      C. French                      D. France
7. Do you have any toothpaste? I want a large \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. tin                      B. box                      C. bar                      D. tube
8. What's the \_\_\_\_\_ at your school? Do you study all day?  
A. timetable                      B. program                      C. course                      D. lesson
9. Listen! The news on the radio \_\_\_\_\_ very informative.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. has                      D. have
10. "Mum, I've won the girls' long jump" - " \_\_\_\_\_ "  
A. It's nothing.                      B. All right.                      C. Congratulations!                      D. Don't be proud!

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Everyday, Alex (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ to work but today he (go) \_\_\_\_\_ by bus.
2. There (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ any apple juice in the fridge.
3. There are lots of gray clouds in the sky. It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. We encouraged people (recycle) \_\_\_\_\_ bottles, cans and paper.
5. My uncle (always/ clean) \_\_\_\_\_ the car when I want to use it.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (air travel/ get) increasingly safe?
7. If you want to lose weight, avoid (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ between meals.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/ do) your assignments yet? Yes, I (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ it 30 minutes ago.
9. They (clean) \_\_\_\_\_ the car. It looks new again.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. Would you describe yourself as a \_\_\_\_\_ person? COMPETE
2. Her \_\_\_\_\_ of English grammar is very limited. KNOW
3. The magazine is aimed at \_\_\_\_\_ and young adults. TEEN
4. He cycled \_\_\_\_\_ and had an accident. CARE
5. In every \_\_\_\_\_ there has to be some give-and-take. FRIEND
6. The dancers were wearing \_\_\_\_\_ Hungarian costume. TRADITION

**Section 4: Identify 10 mistakes in the passage and then correct them.**

Mr. Trung live in a small apartment on Ho Chi Minh city. He teaches Chinese at a primary school there. He often is breakfast in six in the morning and he has lunch at half past eleven in the canteen of the school. He teaches his students in the morning. He teaches them dialogue on Tuesday to Thursday. On Friday, he teach them grammar. In the evening, he usually stay at home and listens books. He goes to the movies theater twice a month. He always go to bed at half to eleven.

1 - _____	2 - _____
3 - _____	4 - _____
5 - _____	6 - _____
7 - _____	8 - _____
9 - _____	10 - _____

**Section 5: Fill each blank with a suitable preposition.**

1. If she is late \_\_\_\_\_ her History class, the teacher will be angry.
2. Have you ever taken part \_\_\_\_\_ volunteer work?
3. Life in the country is very different \_\_\_\_\_ life in the city.
4. You can have a piece \_\_\_\_\_ cake after you've eaten your vegetables.
5. Electricity consumption can be reduced if people turn \_\_\_\_\_ all the electric appliances in an hour.

**PART C: READING**

**Section 1: Fill each blank with a suitable word or phrase in the box to complete the passage.**

<i>broken</i>	<i>rings</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>junk</i>
<i>brings</i>	<i>danger</i>	<i>matter</i>	<i>off</i>	<i>carrying</i>

**The Adventures of Superlan - The Rescue**

This is Lan. She is a student. Lan is listening to music when the phone (1) \_\_\_\_\_. "Four boys are on the mountain. They are in (2) \_\_\_\_\_. One boy is hurt. This is a job for Superlan." Superlan is tall and fast. She can fly. Superlan is looking (3) \_\_\_\_\_ the boys. She flies over the mountain. She sees the boys on the mountain. Superlan lands near the boys. - "It is Superlan!" - "What is the (4) \_\_\_\_\_?" "My leg hurts. I can't walk." Superlan is (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the boy. She is flying to the hospital. - "What is wrong, Superlan?" - "His leg is (6) \_\_\_\_\_ - I must go now. Two boys are on the mountain." The boys see Superlan. They wave to her. One boy slips and falls. Superlan drives and catches the boy. Superlan is strong. She (7) \_\_\_\_\_ two boys to the hospital. Now all the boys are (8) \_\_\_\_\_ hospital. Superlan goes home. She takes (9) \_\_\_\_\_ her uniform. Now she is

Lan. It is evening and Lan is watching television. Superlan is famous. Why is she famous? Because she is fast. Because she is strong. Why is she fast and strong? Because she eats healthy food. She doesn't eat (10) \_\_\_\_\_ food.

**Section 2: Read the passage and choose the word which best fits each gap.**

Many people (1) \_\_\_\_\_ crafting with paper. The materials are available and don't cost much; and no super special talents are needed. Anyone (2) \_\_\_\_\_ be a paper crafter.

There are many different paper craft techniques. Origami is one of the ancient techniques developed in Japan where squares of paper are (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and formed into various objects such as flowers, animals, and boxes. Card (4) \_\_\_\_\_ is also a favourite paper craft technique. Birthday cards are the most popular greeting cards, followed by Christmas cards. Receiving a handmade card is a special gift, because of the time and effort someone spent making it. It lets the receivers know just how much you care (5) \_\_\_\_\_ them.

1. A. want	B. decide	C. learn	D. enjoy
2. A. can	B. must	C. should	D. will
3. A. taken	B. tom	C. folded	D. wrapped
4. A. doing	B. making	C. changing	D. receiving
5. A. over	B. in	C. on	D. about

**Section 3: Read the passage, then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Many students listen to music while they are studying, and say that it helps them learn. Many parents and teachers say that music is just distracting, and that students are better studying in silence. Who is right?

In a study, some scientists asked three groups of students to listen to a piece of music by Mozart or a relaxation tape for ten minutes, or just sit in silence for ten minutes. The students then did a "spatial reasoning" test (a test about remembering shapes and imagining looking at objects from different directions), and the ones who had listened to the Mozart did better in the test.

Taking part in musical activities and learning to play an instrument can improve verbal memory (the ability to remember words). The longer the training lasts, the better the improvement in the memory. So, there's no excuse to give up the piano lessons!

1. Music training helps to develop the ability to memorize things. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Teachers claim that music helps students to concentrate more. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Some learners believe it's useful to listen to music while learning. \_\_\_\_\_

4. The scientists asked students to compose a piece of music. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The students who had listened to Mozart did better in the spatial reasoning test. \_\_\_\_\_

## PART D: WRITING

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: I enjoy my hobby because I find it creative.

2. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: People need about 2,000 calories a day to stay in shape.

3. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: He goes swimming with his father twice a week.

4. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: She spends most of her free time doing volunteer work.

5. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: My sister has been working at the bakery since I was four years old.

6. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Dong Ho painting are made in Dong Ho village.

7. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: I like classical music.

8. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: It's about 5 kilometers from my house to school.

9. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: Water puppetry began in the 11<sup>th</sup> century.

10. A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: This watch costs \$9800. It's too expensive.

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. I/ keen/ play/ sports/ because/ it/ good/ my/ health.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Last year/I/ start/ community/ project/ my aunts.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. We/ be/ still happy/ because/ we/ have/ great time/ learn/ team spirit.

---

4. Because/ the lake/ be/ full/ rubbish/ they/ decide/ clean it up/ last Sunday.

---

5. Mai/ used/ go/ school/ foot/ when/ she/ primary school.

---

6. You/ use/ have/ tricycle/ when/ child?

---

7. So far/ we/ ask/ people/ donate/ books and clothes/ poor children.

---

8. He/ want/ get/ high marks/ final exam/ so/ he/ try/ best/ now.

---

9. If people/ reduce/ smoke/ cars/ motorbikes/ air/ be/ less polluted.

---

10. There/ be/ helpful/ doctor robots/ future/ they/ take care/ patients.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about the benefits of robots.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 6

### PART A: PHONETICS

Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.

1. A. <u>ta</u> ught	B. <u>ca</u> ught	C. be <u>ca</u> use	D. <u>la</u> ugh
2. A. d <u>i</u> verse	B. cr <u>i</u> me	C. d <u>i</u> sease	D. v <u>i</u> olence
3. A. <u>de</u> ath	B. <u>pe</u> aceful	C. <u>we</u> althy	D. <u>sp</u> read
4. A. repl <u>a</u> ced	B. exc <u>i</u> ted	C. trapp <u>e</u> d	D. walk <u>e</u> d
5. A. <u>c</u> arnival	B. fasc <u>i</u> nate	C. <u>c</u> elebrate	D. <u>c</u> inema

Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.

1. A. capital	B. tradition	C. different	D. opera
2. A. difficulty	B. unemployment	C. population	D. individual
3. A. piano	B. policeman	C. museum	D. souvenir
4. A. agree	B. regard	C. career	D. journey
5. A. nuclear	B. solar	C. resource	D. shortage

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.

1. How do you feel now? - I feel \_\_\_\_\_ better.

- A. too                      B. fewer                      C. much                      D. a lots

2. \_\_\_\_\_ book is this, yours or mine?

- A. Who                      B. Whose                      C. Which                      D. Who's

3. People do volunteer work \_\_\_\_\_ they want to make a difference in their community.

- A. but                      B. although                      C. because                      D. so

4. None of the trains stop in Ha Giang. "They \_\_\_\_\_ stop in Ha Giang."

- A. sometimes                      B. never                      C. always                      D. rarely

5. We help families in \_\_\_\_\_ by providing food, clothing, and housing.

- A. need                      B. case                      C. control                      D. shape

6. \_\_\_\_\_ do the buses run? - Every twenty minutes.

- A. How often      B. How far      C. How much      D. What time

7. On my way to school, I \_\_\_\_\_ the noodles at a store.

- A. live      B. sense      C. feel      D. smell

8. We use a \_\_\_\_\_ to change the channels from a distance.

- A. TV schedule      B. volume button      C. newspaper      D. remote control

9. It's optional. We \_\_\_\_\_ go if you don't want.

- A. have to      B. don't have to      C. must      D. mustn't

10. Queenstown in New Zealand has got beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ and a dry climate, so it's ideal for outdoor activities.

- A. look      B. viewing      C. atmosphere      D. scenery

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. She usually played basketball when she (be) \_\_\_\_\_ young.

2. Take this medicine and you (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ better then, Grimmy.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ (You/ ever/ see) a real robot at work? - No, never.

4. We have run out of vegetables. - I (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ some.

5. Please (hurry) \_\_\_\_\_ up, we are going to be late for school again.

6. He (work) \_\_\_\_\_ as a post officer since he (graduate) \_\_\_\_\_ from Havard university.

7. He will be able (understand) \_\_\_\_\_ the conversation after he learns this English course.

8. We can watch TV programmes from other countries by (use) \_\_\_\_\_ wireless TV.

9. Would you like (work) \_\_\_\_\_ as a volunteer?

10. She (never/ eat) \_\_\_\_\_ this kind of cheese before.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. Her latest book is a \_\_\_\_\_ look at teenage life. HUMOR

2. His sudden \_\_\_\_\_ must be a shock to his family. DIE

3. She has one of the biggest stamps \_\_\_\_\_ in Britain. COLLECT

4. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ programs at the festival in Hue. CULTURE

5. France \_\_\_\_\_ a great deal of wine for export. PRODUCT

6. The gas from the chemical factory was extremely \_\_\_\_\_. HARM

7. She receives the highest prize and her parents are \_\_\_\_\_ of her. PRIDE

8. Van Cao is one of the most well-known \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam. MUSIC
9. Telephone is one of the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ over the world. INVENT
10. Money cannot buy \_\_\_\_\_. HAPPY

**Section 4: Identify one mistake in each sentence, and then correct it.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ I have learnt how swim since 2010.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ She has been working for this bank since she leaves university.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ What sweet your voice is!
4. \_\_\_\_\_ I go to the school library to borrow books several times.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Could you say me the way to the post office?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ I received a letter to my friend last week.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ I have gone to Singapore last month.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ My brother can't swim so he is afraid of water.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Don't eat too much salt because it is not good to you.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The weather is getting more bad.

**PART C: READING**

**Section 1: Read the passage and think of ONE suitable word which best fits each gap.**

I live in (1) \_\_\_\_\_ small village called Henfield. There (2) \_\_\_\_\_ about 600 people here. I love the village (3) \_\_\_\_\_ it is very quiet and life is slow and easy. The village is always clean. People look (4) \_\_\_\_\_ it with great care. The air is always clean, (5) \_\_\_\_\_. It is much (6) \_\_\_\_\_ friendly here than in a city because everyone knows each other, and if someone has problem, there are always people (7) \_\_\_\_\_ can help. There are only a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ things that I don't like about Henfield. One thing is that we don't have many things to do in the evening. We don't have any cinemas or theatres. The other thing is that people always talk about each other, and everyone knows what the others (9) \_\_\_\_\_ doing. But I still (10) \_\_\_\_\_ village life to life in a big city.

**Section 2: Read the passage, then answer the questions.**

**REBECCA STEVENS**

Rebecca Stevens was the first woman to climb Mount Everest. Before she went up the highest mountain in the world, she was a journalist and lived in South London.

In 1993, Rebecca left her job and her family and travelled to Asia with some other climbers. She found that life on Everest is very difficult. "You must carry everything on your back," she explained, "so you can

only take things that you will need. You can't wash on the mountain, and in the end, I didn't even take a toothbrush. I am usually a clean person but there is no water, only snow. Water is very heavy so you only take enough to drink!"

Rebecca became famous when she reached the top of Mount Everest on May 17, 1993. Subsequently, she wrote a book about the trip and people often asked her to talk about it. She got a new job too, on a science programme on television.

1. Why did Rebecca Stevens become famous?

---

2. What did Rebecca Stevens do before she climbed Everest?

---

3. Where was Rebecca Stevens from?

---

4. What did Rebecca Stevens do after she reached the top of Mount Everest?

---

5. Why is life on Everest very difficult?

---

### **Section 3: Read the passage and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Our life would be hard without rest and recreation. And people have many different ideas of how to spend their free time. If you enjoy doing a thing or activity in your free time, then you have a hobby. A hobby is an activity, interest, or pastime that is undertaken for pleasure or relaxation, done during one's own time. A person's hobbies depend on his age, character and personal interests. An interesting thing to one person can be boring to another. That's why some people prefer reading, knitting, playing a musical instrument, photography or playing computer games while others prefer travelling, camping or sports.

1. Playing sports is not a hobby.

---

2. Your hobby may change as you get older.

---

3. Different people have the same hobbies.

---

4. One person's hobby may be a boring thing to another person.

---

5. A hobby is anything that you enjoy doing in your free time.

---

### **PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. My brother can run very fast.

→ My brother is

2. The dress is so expensive.

→ What

3. Jenny is the oldest of the four sisters.

→ Jenny has

4. Is this your first visit to Australia?

→ Have

5. Some tourists want to visit Tam Dao because of its fresh air.

→ Some tourists want to visit Tam Dao because the

6. A man in Sri Lanka watches TV more than any other man in the world.

→ No man

7. We do a lot of outdoor activities in autumn.

→ We take part

8. Jim doesn't want to travel by car.

→ Jim isn't interested

9. In the future, home robots can do all our housework.

→ In the future, home robots will

10. How much is a pair of glasses?

→ What's

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. Where/ new/ remote control/ that/I/ buy/ two weeks ago?

---

2. Usher/ like/ eat/ noodles/ but/ sister/ always/ cook/ rice/ him.

---

3. What/ kind/ TV programs/ you/ like/ watch/ most/ when/ small?

---

4. It/ be/ holiday/ tomorrow/ so/ parents/ not/ have to/ go/ work

---

5. I/ go/ post office/ last night/ and/ probably/ go/ there/ tonight/ too.

---

6. There/ might/ not/ meeting/ this morning/ because/ director/ sick.

---

7. If/ you/ not/ study/ hard/ fail/ exam.

---

8. Tom/ want/ get/ high marks/ final exam/ he/ try/ best/ now.

---

9. Shakira/ not go/ school/ last Tuesday/ because / she/ have/ bad cold.

---

10. I/ not talk/ aunt/ since/ he/ buy/ new apartment/ in the city center.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about the benefits of playing sports.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 7

## ĐỀ SỐ 7

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. vegetab <u>le</u> s	B. watch <u>e</u> s	C. bench <u>e</u> s	D. class <u>e</u> s
2. A. g <u>o</u> ggles	B. sp <u>o</u> rt	C. st <u>o</u> p	D. n <u>o</u> t
3. A. deat <u>h</u>	B. cl <u>o</u> th	C. bat <u>h</u> e	D. mon <u>th</u>
4. A. s <u>u</u> itable	B. situat <u>u</u> ion	C. regulat <u>u</u> ion	D. cust <u>u</u> mer
5. A. mone <u>y</u>	B. donke <u>y</u>	C. hone <u>y</u>	D. surve <u>y</u>

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. cartoon	B. honor	C. culture	D. honest
2. A. character	B. adventure	C. library	D. knowledge
3. A. medical	B. hospital	C. politic	D. electric
4. A. husband	B. married	C. cassette	D. function
5. A. accent	B. legend	C. icon	D. parade

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

1. She doesn't talk much in public. She is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. creative                  B. kind                  C. shy                  D. sociable

2. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ water!

- A. save                  B. waste                  C. use                  D. leave

3. "Would you like some drink?" - "\_\_\_\_\_. I'm not thirsty."

- A. Yes, please                  B. Sorry, I can't                  C. No, thanks                  D. No, I would

4. She is in the hospital now. \_\_\_\_\_ we go and see her?

- A. Would                  B. Do                  C. Will                  D. Did

5. We have been stuck \_\_\_\_\_ a traffic jam \_\_\_\_\_ over two hours.

- A. in – for                  B. at – for                  C. at – in                  D. in – in

6. UFO \_\_\_\_\_ Unidentified Flying Object.

- A. stands in                  B. stands up                  C. stands about                  D. stands

7. \_\_\_\_\_, the hard rock band Loudness was cancelled.

- A. After raining heavily                  B. Because of heavy rain  
C. When it rains heavily                  D. Despite heavy rain

8. Promise me you \_\_\_\_\_ call before 10, I hate being woken up early!

- A. won't                  B. don't                  C. shouldn't                  D. can't

9. The use of wind energy is growing because it is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. environmental friendly                  B. friendly environment  
C. friendly environmental                  D. environmentally friendly

10. What \_\_\_\_\_ if carbon dioxide levels continue to increase?

- A. happen                  B. will happen                  C. happened                  D. would happen

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. He can't speak on the phone because he (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a shower.

2. I (help) \_\_\_\_\_ you when I finish my work.

3. Two hours (be) \_\_\_\_\_ not enough to finish this task.

4. (Walk) \_\_\_\_\_ in the rain gives him pleasure.

5. You should knock the door before (enter) \_\_\_\_\_ the office.

6. In Physics, we have a lot of homework (do) \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Listen! Someone (knock) \_\_\_\_\_ at the door.

8. How long (you/ know) \_\_\_\_\_ Paul? I (just/ know) \_\_\_\_\_ him for a year.

9. I lost my money, so we (cannot/ buy) \_\_\_\_\_ anything.

10. (Your dog/ ever/ bite) \_\_\_\_\_ anyone? Yes, he (bite) the postman last month.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. He speaks English \_\_\_\_\_. FLUENCE

2. The knife is \_\_\_\_\_. It can't cut anything. USE

3. People learning a new language encounter some \_\_\_\_\_. DIFFICULT

4. "He's not coming home," she said \_\_\_\_\_. HAPPY

5. \_\_\_\_\_ have reported on how we are affected by the noise. SCIENCE

6. We started our trip on a beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ morning. CLOUD

7. Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_ about train times? INFORM

8. Nowadays, there's very little \_\_\_\_\_ between mother and daughter. COMMUNICATE
9. He lacks the \_\_\_\_\_ skills for the job. NECESSITY
10. The kids had an \_\_\_\_\_ time at the cinema. ENJOY

**Section 4: Choose the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions and then correct it.**

1. Unluckily, we won the game although we practiced a lot.  
 A. Unluckily                      B. won                      C. although                      D. practiced
2. Can you say the difference between a sport and a game?  
 A. Can                      B. say                      C. difference                      D. between
3. It is very dangerously to drive too fast.  
 A. is                      B. dangerously                      C. drive                      D. too fast
4. Can you go to the store to buy any fruit for me?  
 A. Can                      B. go to                      C. any                      D. for
5. I would like buying a packet of tea and a tube of toothpaste.  
 A. would like                      B. buying                      C. a pack of tea                      D. a tube
6. In my spare time, I do judo and play a lot of running.  
 A. square                      B. do                      C. play                      D. a lot of
7. Go straight ahead. Take the first street in the right.  
 A. Go straight                      B. ahead                      C. the first street                      D. in
8. I hope you came and join the fun.  
 A. I                      B. came                      C. join                      D. the fun
9. Hoa is worried because she does not have any friend.  
 A. worried                      B. because                      C. she                      D. any friend
10. I usually do my homework to Nam after school.  
 A. usually                      B. homework                      C. to                      D. after school

**Section 5: Put the sentences in the right column in the correct order to make a conversation between Anna and Blake.**

Anna	Blake
1. I've lost two small hair brushes, Blake. They're a pair.	A. It's over there under the chair.

2. Yes. They're nowhere here.		B. Have you looked upstairs?		
3. Yes. I've looked everywhere upstairs and downstairs. They aren't anywhere.		C. Well, you've wearing one of them in your hair, near your right ear.		
4. Yes. They square hairbrushes. Have you seen them anywhere?		D. Hm! Are they square Anna?		
5. Oh dear! Then where's the other one?		E. Have you looked carefully everywhere?		
1-	2-	3-	4-	5-

## PART C: READING

### Section 1: Read the passage and think of ONE suitable word which best fits each gap.

Dear Katy,

Thank you for your writing, and thank you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the photographs. Charlie and Celion (2) \_\_\_\_\_ very pretty.

What type of (3) \_\_\_\_\_ do we (4) \_\_\_\_\_ in? Well, it's not a house, it's a flat. It has two bathrooms, three bedrooms, and a large dinning room. There is a garden just opposite our building (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the children play.

You know (6) \_\_\_\_\_ Justin and I work. We always wake up (7) \_\_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock and travel to work by bus. Justin (8) \_\_\_\_\_ from 7.45 until 1.00 and then he has lunch. He works (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon, and comes home at about half past five. I begin to work at 8.00 and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ at around 4 o'clock.

### Section 2: Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Manchester has a population of about 5 million, but it is not the capital city of Britain. London is the capital and it's the biggest city in Britain. But Manchester is the wettest! In Manchester, it rains in spring, summer, fall and winter! The city is very noisy and there is a lot of pollution. There are a lot of cars but there aren't many bikes and motorbikes because of the weather. Usually, people drive their cars to work, and children take a bus to school. Near the city there are lots of lakes and mountains. People often go walking there on the weekend. When the weather is nice, they sometimes take a picnic - but that's only a few days a year! But Manchester also has a lot of cinemas and theaters so there is always something to do on the weekend.

1. How is the weather in Manchester?

---

2. Is Manchester bigger than London?

---

3. Why aren't there many bikes and motorbikes in Manchester?

---

4. Is there anything to do on the weekend?

---

5. Where do people often go walking on the weekend?

---

## **PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. These cassettes belong to my brother.

→ These are

2. I spend one hour a day doing household chores.

→ It takes me

3. How tall are you?

→ What is

4. Out of the two sisters, I am shorter. → Out of the two sisters, Sarah

5. Let's walk to school.

→ Why

6. No students in my class study better than Levine.

→ Levine is

7. He hasn't met his parents for a long time.

→ It is

8. Lan is very good at basketball.

→ Lan can

9. I haven't gone to the zoo for 5 months.

→ The last

10. Maya's hair is as long as my hair.

→ Maya's hair is the

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. We/ get up/ 6.30 /every day/ today/ we/ get up/ 7.00.

---

2. There/ many thing/ do/ weekend.

---

3. I/ fancy/ read/ newspapers/ famous people.

---

4. When/ Jimmy/ nine/ he/ can/ speak/ Japanese/ fluent.

---

5. They/ worried/ that/ some people/ use/ robots/ bad things.

---

6. Robots/ able/ recognize/ our voices/ faces/ but/ they/ not/ able to/ think/ like/ human.

---

7. Students/ class 4B/ plant/ some trees/ school yard/ next month.

---

8. I/ take part/ swimming competition/ school/ last week/ win/ second prize.

---

9. Merlion/ lion's head/ fish's body/ symbol/ Singapore.

---

10. Questions/ quiz show/ different subjects/ grade six/ grade nine.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about the ways to protect the environment.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---



# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 8

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. <u>idea</u>	B. <u>reason</u>	C. <u>fe</u> ature	D. <u>te</u> acher
2. A. <u>complain</u>	B. <u>band</u>	C. <u>thank</u>	D. <u>in</u> sert
3. A. <u>me</u> chanic	B. <u>mach</u> inery	C. <u>ch</u> emist	D. <u>ch</u> olera
4. A. <u>gram</u> mar	B. <u>dam</u> age	C. <u>ma</u> mmal	D. <u>dra</u> ma
5. A. <u>kiss</u> ed	B. <u>help</u> ed	C. <u>forc</u> ed	D. <u>need</u> ed

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. armchair	B. result	C. worker	D. theater
2. A. bakery	B. accident	C. lemonade	D. badminton
3. A. favourite	B. unhappy	C. dangerous	D. difficult
4. A. travel	B. visit	C. listen	D. unload
5. A. govern	B. succeed	C. address	D. combine

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

1. You don't look very well. Perhaps you \_\_\_\_\_ to see a doctor.

A. had better                  B. should                  C. ought                  D. may

2. Some people think that married women \_\_\_\_\_ pursue a career!

A. should not                  B. had                  C. must not                  D. need

3. Educated women are likely to get \_\_\_\_\_ jobs and become more important at home.

A. well-trained                  B. well-paid                  C. well-prepared                  D. well-educated

4. Mary's not at \_\_\_\_\_ office. I think she's gone \_\_\_\_\_ home.

A. x – x                  B. the – x                  C. x – the                  D. the – the

5. Don't throw trash into the river. It \_\_\_\_\_ water.

A. plows                  B. saves                  C. damages                  D. pollutes

6. There are \_\_\_\_\_ eggs in the supermarket.

- A. hundreds of      B. hundreds      C. hundred of      D. hundred

7. The summer camp is for children \_\_\_\_\_ between 10 and 15.

- A. age      B. aged      C. aging      D. ages

8. If we had a \_\_\_\_\_, we wouldn't get lost

- A. backpack      B. sleeping bag      C. compass      D. painkiller

9. You \_\_\_\_\_ be late for school. It's against the school regulations

- A. must      B. mustn't      C. can      D. can't

10. "Thank you very much for your help" - "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Thank you very much too.      B. How nice of you to say so!  
C. Yes. That's alright.      D. You're welcome.

**Section 2: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. He (write) \_\_\_\_\_ three books and he is working on another book.

2. What (you/ do) \_\_\_\_\_ after (go) \_\_\_\_\_ home tomorrow?

3. He often (say) \_\_\_\_\_ OK when (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ with the guests.

4. People (plant) \_\_\_\_\_ trees since it stopped (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.

5. We must take an umbrella. It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Section 3: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. People have to stop \_\_\_\_\_ to preserve the natural world. FOREST

2. His later years were devoted largely to \_\_\_\_\_ work. CHARITY

3. We looked for him but he had \_\_\_\_\_ into the crowd. APPEAR

4. Runners should use \_\_\_\_\_ water bottles. FILL

5. I enjoy drawing because it teaches me \_\_\_\_\_. CONCENTRATE

6. Local government \_\_\_\_\_ will take place in April. ELECT

7. I always feel \_\_\_\_\_ after running for a long time. EXHAUST

8. This hotel is \_\_\_\_\_ for its excellent service. KNOW

9. I find going shopping so \_\_\_\_\_. RELAX

10. Some \_\_\_\_\_ saw a shark in the sea. SWIM

**Section 4: Fill each blank with a suitable preposition.**

1. Greenhouse effect has negative effect \_\_\_\_\_ the environment.

2. We spent the whole night swapping stories \_\_\_\_\_ each other.

3. They are doing a survey of students' attitudes \_\_\_\_\_ pollution.
4. Children should learn to behave \_\_\_\_\_ a good manner.
5. I have a toothache so I must see a dentist \_\_\_\_\_ early as I can.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ my opinion, the food wasn't delicious.
7. Is there anything exciting \_\_\_\_\_ the paper today? Well, there's an unusual photograph \_\_\_\_\_ the back page.
8. When did they arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel?
9. I don't understand. Can you explain this word \_\_\_\_\_ me?
10. Her new car looks more \_\_\_\_\_ an aeroplane.

**Section 5: Match the questions with the answers.**

1. How can visitors get to the Falls?		A. Relax on beautiful beaches		
2. How long is a marathon?		B. Every four years.		
3. What must you bring when going camping?		C. By boat.		
4. How often are the Olympic Games held?		D. 29.435 kilometers.		
5. What can we do in Sam Son?		E. Tent, sun cream and First Aid Kit.		
1- _____	2- _____	3- _____	4- _____	5- _____

**PART C: READING**

**Section 1: Read the passage and think of ONE suitable word which best fits each gap.**

Of all my relatives, I like my aunt Jenny the (1) \_\_\_\_\_. She's my mother's youngest sister. She has never married and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ alone in a small village near Bath. She's forty years old, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ she's quite young in spirit. She has (4) \_\_\_\_\_ fair complexion, dark blue eyes and thick black hair. She has a kind face, and when you meet (5) \_\_\_\_\_, the first thing you notice (6) \_\_\_\_\_ her smile. Her face is a little wrinkled now, but I believe she is still attractive. She is the type of person you can always go to if you (7) \_\_\_\_\_ a problem and she's extremely generous. She likes reading (8) \_\_\_\_\_ gardening, and she still goes (9) \_\_\_\_\_ long walks over the hills. I hope I'm as active as she is when I'm at her (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Section 2: Read the passage, then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

Smoke and waste chemicals are polluting the air and our environment. We are wasting too much power. Smokes from cars, buses, trucks and motorbikes are very harmful. We are producing too much trash. This is polluting the land, the rivers and the oceans, too. What should we do to protect our

environment? We should save water and electricity. We shouldn't leave our trash in the country. We should collect used paper, bottles and cans. We can recycle them to save the natural resources.

1. We should leave our rubbish in the country. \_\_\_\_\_
2. We are advised not to waste water and electricity. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Waste chemicals cause air pollution. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We can't recycle used bottles and cans. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Smokes from vehicles do harm to people's health. \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 3: Read the passage, then answer the questions.**

Many people working in London prefer to live outside it, and to go to their offices, factories or schools everyday by train, car or bus, even though this means they have to wake up earlier in the morning and come home later in the evening.

One benefit of living outside London is that houses are cheaper. Even a little flat in London without garden costs quite a lot to rent. With the same amount of money, one can get a small house in the country with a garden of one's own.

Then, in the country one can rest from the noise and hurry of the town. Although one has to get up earlier and spend more time in trains or buses, one can sleep better at night, and during weekends. In summer evenings one enjoys the fresh, clean air of the country. If one likes gardens, one can spend one's free time digging, planting, watering and doing the hundred and one other jobs which are needed in a garden.

1. What is one advantage of living outside London?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What can a person get in the country with the same money of a small flat in London?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What do many people who work in London prefer?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What can a person with the interest in gardening do in the country?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What can a person enjoy when he lives in the country?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. Her sister walks to school at 7 o'clock.

→ Her sister goes

2. It is a long time since we last met.

→ We haven't

3. I have taught Geography for five months.

→ I started

4. No hotel on the street is newer than this hotel.

→ This hotel

5. Does his school have thirty-four classrooms and nine hundred-sixty students?

→ Are

6. What's your sister's weight?

→ How

7. This is the first time he went abroad.

→ He

8. In spite of his aching leg, Jim managed to complete the race.

→ Although

9. Tom could not go to work because he was ill.

→ Because of

10. Taylor didn't play badminton last Monday because he was sick.

→ Taylor was

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. She/ be/ absent/ work/ two weeks ago/ because/ she/ ill.

---

2. I/ hope/I/ see/ you/ airport.

---

3. Diana/ begin/ sing/ when/ 5 years old.

---

4. This/ be/ good/ computer/I/ ever/ use.

---

5. Look!/ they/ eat/ pizza/ and/ drink/ coffee/ over/ there.

---

6. It/ be/ one/ the/ expensive/ bike/ world.

---

7. Many plants/ animals/ danger/ because/ people/ destroying/ them.

---

8. Sign/ warn/ children/ the dangers/ swim/ this river.

---

9. I/ not/ take/ bath/ since/ Sunday.

---

10. If we/ cut/ more/ trees/ forest/ there/ be/ more/ floods.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about your best friend at school.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6

## ĐỀ SỐ 9

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. lunch <u>h</u>	B. kit <u>ch</u> en	C. tech <u>n</u> ology	D. pur <u>ch</u> ase
2. A. practic <u>e</u> d	B. swallow <u>e</u> d	C. finish <u>e</u> d	D. punch <u>e</u> d
3. A. villag <u>e</u>	B. luggag <u>e</u>	C. engag <u>e</u>	D. damag <u>e</u>
4. A. month <u>s</u>	B. delight <u>s</u>	C. book <u>s</u>	D. feelin <u>g</u> s
5. A. n <u>u</u> number	B. f <u>u</u> ture	C. f <u>u</u> rious	D. am <u>u</u> se

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. publish	B. replace	C. involve	D. escape
2. A. president	B. physicist	C. inventor	D. property
3. A. police	B. novel	C. system	D. woman
4. A. elephant	B. dinosaur	C. buffalo	D. mosquito
5. A. different	B. achievement	C. educate	D. primary

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

- At the weekend we can play a \_\_\_\_\_ of badminton or join in a football match.  
A. sport                      B. game                      C. match                      D. pair
- He'll be remembered both as a brilliant footballer and as a true \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sporty                      B. sporting                      C. sporter                      D. sportsman
- She doesn't mind \_\_\_\_\_ me with my exercises.  
A. helping                      B. to help                      C. help                      D. helps
- I'm sorry that I can't \_\_\_\_\_ your invitation.  
A. take                      B. accept                      C. agree                      D. have
- \_\_\_\_\_ in Shanghai than in any other city in China.

- [illegible]

1. \_\_\_\_\_ (not open) the window, please. It's cold outside.
2. My aunt (write) \_\_\_\_\_ me a letter several times.
3. Some adults in our town have cars but my parents (not have) \_\_\_\_\_ one. They (like) \_\_\_\_\_ to go to work by train.
4. When my brother and I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ small, we (go) \_\_\_\_\_ jogging every weekend.
5. Jane (not do) \_\_\_\_\_ her homework yet.
6. Adele (help) \_\_\_\_\_ me as soon as she finishes her homework.
7. How much (it/ cost) \_\_\_\_\_ to send a gift to Bangkok?
8. It's boring (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the same thing every day.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ (You/ ever/ talk) to a native speaker of English, Helen?
10. I congratulated Anny on (pass) \_\_\_\_\_ the entrance exam.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the experiment is about 3 hours. LONG
2. I don't believe that the first-\_\_\_\_\_ can bring good or bad luck. FOOT
3. That's a \_\_\_\_\_ designer. He has numerous new ideas. CREATE
4. You must \_\_\_\_\_ to the teacher for your lateness. APOLOGY
5. I've eaten a lot, I really feel \_\_\_\_\_ . COMFORT

6. Keep \_\_\_\_\_! The teacher is explaining the lesson. SILENCE
7. They were happy because their work was finished \_\_\_\_\_. SUCCESS
8. A good diet is vital for a child's healthy \_\_\_\_\_. DEVELOP
9. There were twenty \_\_\_\_\_ in the race. COMPETE
10. She rarely takes her cousin's \_\_\_\_\_. ADVISE

**Section 4: Put the following sentences in the correct order to make a conversation**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ A. It's on January 1st. It lasts three days through January 3<sup>rd</sup>.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ B. I see. And what do they usually do on the New Year's Eve?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ C. Could you tell me something about Japanese Year? When is the New Year?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ D. Do they decorate the houses with trees and flowers?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ E. What do people do to celebrate the New Year?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ F. Some families put on special kimonos to go to visit pagodas. Then they come home and eat the special New Year's Day's food and drink a lot of rice wine.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ G. What do they usually do next?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ H. They clean and decorate their houses a few days before the New Year.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I. Yes, they usually decorate their houses with some pine trees on both sides of the door. People also exchange cards and presents.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ J. They watch television and then television will broadcast 108 bells. As soon as the 108<sup>th</sup> bell is rung, people all say "Happy New Year".

**Section 5: Choose the underlined part that needs correction in each of the following questions and then correct it.**

1. If I meet him, I will tell him coming see you immediately.  
 A. meet                      B. will tell                      C. coming                      D. see
2. It was three weeks since they last cleaned up the street.  
 A. was                      B. since                      C. last                      D. cleaned
3. No one plays this piece of music as beautiful as she does.  
 A. plays                      B. as                      C. beautiful                      D. does
4. We couldn't keep on playing football because of it rained heavily.  
 A. couldn't                      B. playing                      C. because of                      D. heavily
5. My mother finds playing board games is funny.  
 A. finds                      B. playing                      C. is                      D. funny

## PART C: READING

### Section 1: Read the passage and think of ONE suitable word which best fits each gap.

Fansipan is the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ peak of Viet Nam, Laos and Cambodia, so it is (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the “Roof of Indochina” while the local (3) \_\_\_\_\_ call it Huasipan. Huasipan means large tottering rock. Fansipan is 3,143 metres (4) \_\_\_\_\_. It is in Lao Cai Province, nine kilometres southwest of Sa Pa Town (5) \_\_\_\_\_ the Hoang Lien Son Mountain Range.

Fansipan is now (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of the very few ecotourist spots of Viet Nam, with about 2,024 varieties of plants and 327 types of animals and insects. Many tourist (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the mountain every year. If you climb the mountain from the end of February (8) \_\_\_\_\_ March, you (9) \_\_\_\_\_ have a chance to admire the beautiful blooming flowers in many different (10) \_\_\_\_\_.

### Section 2: Read the passage, then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

On Christmas Eve, everything is hurried and bustle. Offices and public buildings close at one o'clock, but the shops stay open later. Most big cities, especially London, are decorated with colored lights across the streets and enormous Christmas trees. The main line stations, trains and buses are crowded with people traveling from all parts of the country to be at home for Christmas.

In the homes, there is a great air of expectation. The children are also decorating the house with colored lights. Christmas cards with the words “A Merry Christmas to You” or “Wishing You a Merry Christmas and Prosperous New Year”, or “With the Compliments of the Season”, etc. - are arranged on shelves, tables and sometimes hung round the walls.

Meanwhile the housewife is probably busy in the kitchen getting things ready for the next day's dinner. The Christmas bird, nowadays usually a turkey, is being prepared, the pudding is inspected and the cake is got out of its tin.

In small towns and villages, one may still see carol-singers who come and stand in front of the house and sing or play Christmas carols. They expect a Christmas box from a few pennies and coppers upwards in return for their musical efforts. This money is then donated to help old people.

1. The shops close at one o'clock on Christmas Eve. \_\_\_\_\_
2. People furnish the streets with colored lights in the majority of large cities. \_\_\_\_\_
3. People expect to gather with their families at home on Christmas Eve. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Trains and buses are almost empty on Christmas Eve. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Colored lights are not used as ornaments at homes. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Christmas cards only have wishes for Christmas.
7. Turkey and pudding are traditional food at Christmas.
8. We are able to see carol-singers in the countryside.
9. The carol-singers collect money for themselves.
10. The money collected is used for a good purpose.

---

---

---

---

---

## **PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. There are three interesting films on VTV1 today.  
→ Today VTV1
2. We began to learn History when we were in grade 4.  
→ We have
3. Jane's house is near the river.  
→ Jane's house isn't
4. Da Nang is smaller than Ha Noi, and Ha Noi is smaller than Ho Chi Minh City.  
→ Ho Chi Minh City is the
5. No house in the street is older than my house.  
→ My house
6. An old woman feeds the pigeons.  
→ The pigeons
7. A burglar broke the window.  
→ The window
8. You must do your homework before going shopping.  
→ Remember
9. I won't be able to do anything unless I have a quiet room.  
→ If
10. Without the air, every creature on earth will be extinct.  
→ If there

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. Five months ago/ father/ work/ engineer/ printing factory.

---

2. Shelton/ not go/ school/ last week/ because/ he/ have/ bad cold.

3. How far/ be/ it/ my house/ nearest library?

4. Harry/ fond/ learn/ Chemistry/ because/ he/ can/ carry/ experiments.

5. The girl/ fall/ river/ yesterday/ but/ fortunately/ we/ can/ rescue/ her.

6. What kind/ TV programme/ you like/ most/ when/ you/ small?

7. Although/ Peter/ tired/ yesterday/ he/ try/ finish/ project.

8. I/ never/ read/ such/ romantic story/ before.

9. She/ spend/ most/ time/ surf/ net/ information/ the next trip.

10. Tourism/ be/ one/ world' largest industries/ a long time.

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about your school.**

**ĐỀ THI BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI LỚP 6**

## ĐỀ SỐ 10

### PART A: PHONETICS

**Section 1: Choose the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.**

1. A. <u>fo</u> od	B. <u>loo</u> k	C. <u>too</u> k	D. <u>goo</u> d
2. A. nat <u>ure</u>	B. <u>pu</u> re	C. pict <u>ure</u>	D. cult <u>ure</u>
3. A. <u>the</u> ory	B. <u>there</u> fore	C. nei <u>th</u> er	D. breat <u>h</u> e
4. A. <u>b</u> asket	B. sub <u>w</u> ay	C. clim <u>b</u> ing	D. cl <u>u</u> b
5. A. miss <u>e</u> d	B. smok <u>e</u> d	C. stopp <u>e</u> d	D. pleas <u>e</u> d

**Section 2: Choose the word that has different stress word from the others in each of the following questions.**

1. A. consist	B. carry	C. remove	D. protect
2. A. contain	B. express	C. carbon	D. obey
3. A. remember	B. influence	C. expression	D. connection
4. A. industry	B. performance	C. important	D. provision
5. A. telephone	B. photograph	C. expertise	D. diplomat

### PART B: VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**Section 1: Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each of the following questions.**

- The bigger the house is, the \_\_\_\_\_ furniture it needs.  
A. more                      B. less                      C. few                      D. much
- "Do you need anything else?" - "\_\_\_\_\_."  
A. Good job!              B. That's all. Thanks.    C. With pleasure.        D. You're welcome
- People use f\_\_\_\_\_ first-aid to ease the pain.  
A. so much              B. order                      C. so                      D. in order
- My family is going to buy a \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
A. modern big brick    B. big brick modern    C. big modern brick    D. brick big modern
- "Happy New Year to you!" - "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. Thank you, and you too                      B. I'm very happy, and you, too  
C. Have a good time, please                      D. That's all right, thanks
- The exercise is \_\_\_\_\_ difficult for him to answer.

A. so                      B. too                      C. such                      D. enough

7. My fridge has \_\_\_\_\_ to throw a party.

A. food and drink enough                      B. food enough and drink enough  
C. enough food and enough drink                      D. enough food and drink

8. How \_\_\_\_\_ she sings!

A. well                      B. best                      C. good                      D. better

9. Look! You are having the same \_\_\_\_\_ handbag with this one.

A. small leather black                      B. black small leather  
C. small black leather                      D. black leather small

10. \_\_\_\_\_ Soviet Union was the first country to send a man into \_\_\_\_\_ space.

A. The - x                      B. A - the                      C. The - the                      D. A - x

**Section 2: Choose the word or phrase that is CLOSEST in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following sentences.**

1. Training for the Olympics require an enormous amount of work; athletes who want to compete must work extremely hard.

A. very large                      B. hardly enough                      C. really common                      D. quite unusual

2. Could you take care of our children while I go away?

A. look for                      B. look at                      C. look like                      D. look after

3. When being interviewed, you should concentrate on what the interviewer is asking you.

A. take note                      B. give an answer to                      C. pay attention to                      D. show interest in

**Section 3: Choose the word or phrase that is OPPOSITE in meaning to the underlined part in each of the following sentences.**

1. The doctor advised Mark to give up smoking.

A. finish                      B. stop                      C. continue                      D. delay

2. The earth is being threatened and the future looks bad.

A. made                      B. defended                      C. varied                      D. done

3. We cannot clean up our polluted rivers and seas overnight.

A. respected                      B. cleared                      C. honored                      D. purified

**Section 4: Complete the sentences using the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.**

1. If you practice (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese everyday, you (improve) \_\_\_\_\_ your pronunciation.

2. He suggested (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the Asian restaurant.
3. I have enjoyed (meet) \_\_\_\_\_ you. Hope (see) \_\_\_\_\_ you again soon.
4. Listen to me and (not/ make) \_\_\_\_\_ a noise.
5. She (be) \_\_\_\_\_ tired this morning because she (not/ go) \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early last night.
6. He (never/ learn) \_\_\_\_\_ how to play a violin before.
7. Why (we/ not/ use) \_\_\_\_\_ public transportation instead of (go) \_\_\_\_\_ by motorbikes?
8. My sister (not/ come) \_\_\_\_\_ back our hometown since she (study) \_\_\_\_\_ abroad in 2002.
9. He (just/ leave) \_\_\_\_\_ for work, so you (can not/ see) \_\_\_\_\_ him now.
10. She (already/ read) \_\_\_\_\_ that novel since Christmas.

**Section 5: Complete the sentences using the correct form of the words in capital.**

1. Our neighbours have always been very \_\_\_\_\_ to us. FRIEND
2. I'm sorry, I was only trying to be \_\_\_\_\_. HELP
3. \_\_\_\_\_, she has failed the final exam. LUCKY
4. American English and British English obviously \_\_\_\_\_ in pronunciation. DIFFERENT
5. Fill up \_\_\_\_\_ bottles from the tap. USABLE
6. Have I \_\_\_\_\_ your name correctly? PRONUNCIATION
7. I think country life is \_\_\_\_\_ because it is not close to shops and services. CONVENIENT
8. The children had an \_\_\_\_\_ about what game to play. ARGUE
9. This is an interesting and highly \_\_\_\_\_ book. INFORM
10. I would like to express my thanks for your \_\_\_\_\_. KIND

**Section 6: Match the questions with the answers.**

1. Do you think city people are friendlier than country one?		A. I played outside with my friends or went shopping with my mother.		
2. Where is your hometown?		B. Yes, there are some.		
3. What did you usually do for fun?		C. I lived in a small town called Beva.		
4. Are there any street markets in your hometown?		D. Both have pros and cons.		
5. Which is better, city life or rural life?		E. Yes. They're also happier.		
1 - _____	2 - _____	3 - _____	4 - _____	5 - _____

### Section 7: Fill each blank with a suitable preposition

1. The city council is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ keeping the streets clean.
2. The campaign has succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ raising public awareness \_\_\_\_\_ the issue.
3. The factory replaced most of its workers \_\_\_\_\_ robots.
4. What do you want to be when you grow \_\_\_\_\_?

## PART C: READING

### Section I: Read the passage and think of ONE suitable word which best fits each gap.

#### An Eco Home

John Kangister and his wife, Kathy live an interesting house. It's an eco home. Eco homes don't harm (1) \_\_\_\_\_ environment. They don't use coal or oil, so they don't produce dangerous gases. John and Kathy's eco home is in California, USA. It looks (2) \_\_\_\_\_ a house from one of The Lord of the Rings films. Most of the house is underground. The house is very cheap to build. It (3) \_\_\_\_\_ wooden walls and floors. The windows (4) \_\_\_\_\_ recycled glass. (5) \_\_\_\_\_ are solar panels to make electricity for the lights and computers. John and Kathy get water (6) \_\_\_\_\_ a well and they grow vegetables in the mud (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the house. Now John and Kathy don't want (8) \_\_\_\_\_ live anywhere else. They love their home (9) \_\_\_\_\_ it helps the planet greener and it looks fantastic. They think (10) \_\_\_\_\_ eco homes are a great idea for everyone.

### Section 2: Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Most robots today are industrial robots. Humans use them to make work easier and quicker. You often see them in car factories where they put the parts of the cars together. They are useful for this kind of work as it is 'dull, dirty and dangerous' - DDD. Robots are often used for DDD jobs and where a specific action needs to be repeated. It is very difficult for humans to do this.

There are many different types of robots. Some robots travel through space, work on the bottom of the ocean, or go inside volcanoes. They do the work of people, but for a different reason this time: there are places that are very dangerous for people, or impossible for people to go to.

Robots are everywhere. Most people don't know that robots help US everyday and in many different ways. In most houses, there are robots. For example, in some houses today there is a washing machine in the kitchen. Washing machines are robots. People can programme them and then they wash clothes automatically.

Some scientists make robots for fun. For example, the dogs are made as toys for small children. Japan produces the largest number of robots. Every year in the capital, Tokyo, there is a robot exhibition called Robodex. It is the largest robot exhibition in the world.

1. Can robots bring us fun? Give an example.

---

2. What can robots do in car factories?

---

3. Why do people often use robots to work on the bottom of the ocean or inside volcanoes?

---

4. Why are robots useful or this kind of work?

---

5. What is the example of home robots mentioned in the passage?

---

**Section 3: Read the passage, then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

The British spend their free time in different ways. People generally use it to relax, but many people also do voluntary work, especially for charities.

A lot of free time is spent in the home, where the most popular leisure activity is watching television. In the summer gardening is popular, and in winter it is often replaced by “do-it- yourself”, when people spend time improving or repairing their homes.

Some leisure activities are mostly or entirely social. Inviting friends for a drink or a meal at home is the most usual one. Sometimes people join friends for a drink in a pub, or have dinner in a restaurant.

Families often have a “day out” at the weekend, especially in summer, with a visit to a local event. Young people go to clubs and discos, while people of all ages go to the theatre, the cinema, art exhibitions and concerts.

1. Many British people use their free time to help people in need. \_\_\_\_\_

2. In the summer, the British prefer indoor activities. \_\_\_\_\_

3. All free time activities are individual activities. \_\_\_\_\_

4. Sometimes people go with their friends to a pub or restaurant. \_\_\_\_\_

5. British young people don't like going to the movies. \_\_\_\_\_

**PART D: WRITING**

**Section 1: Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means the same as the original one.**

1. I spent more than 3 hours watching the film "Impossible missions".

→ It

2. She likes to hang out with friends on Saturday evening.

→ She's keen

3. Playing guitar isn't as difficult as I think.

→ Playing guitar is

4. You won't pass the exam if you don't learn harder.

→ Unless

5. The story was so ambiguous that we couldn't understand it.

→ The story was too

6. Your village is so beautiful.

→ How

7. Although the villagers are poor, they live a happy and healthy life.

→ In spite of

8. Are there any Korean restaurants in the nearest district?

→ Does

9. It's unnecessary to change the dates for our trip.

→ We

10. Jun makes crafts better than his sister.

→ Jun's sister doesn't

**Section 2: Write sentences using prompts.**

1. Play/ team sports/ give/ you/ much/ fun/ individual sports.

---

2. City/ people/ keen/ share/ guests/ life/ tradition.

---

3. If/ my grandfather/ continue/ smoke/ he/ be/ ill.

---

4. Many/ urban area/ suffer/ poor/ air quality/ due/ pollution/ smog.

---

5. Hundreds of years/ whales/ sell/ meat/ oil/ and/ some species/ wipe out.

---

**Section 3: Write a paragraph (about 100 words) about your most memorable holiday.**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---